



# DS2208



**Digital Scanner**

---

**Product Reference Guide**





# **DS2208 DIGITAL SCANNER PRODUCT REFERENCE GUIDE**

MN-002874-08EN

Revision A

May 2020

No part of this publication may be reproduced or used in any form, or by any electrical or mechanical means, without permission in writing from Zebra. This includes electronic or mechanical means, such as photocopying, recording, or information storage and retrieval systems. The material in this manual is subject to change without notice.

The software is provided strictly on an “as is” basis. All software, including firmware, furnished to the user is on a licensed basis. Zebra grants to the user a non-transferable and non-exclusive license to use each software or firmware program delivered hereunder (licensed program). Except as noted below, such license may not be assigned, sublicensed, or otherwise transferred by the user without prior written consent of Zebra. No right to copy a licensed program in whole or in part is granted, except as permitted under copyright law. The user shall not modify, merge, or incorporate any form or portion of a licensed program with other program material, create a derivative work from a licensed program, or use a licensed program in a network without written permission from Zebra. The user agrees to maintain Zebra’s copyright notice on the licensed programs delivered hereunder, and to include the same on any authorized copies it makes, in whole or in part. The user agrees not to decompile, disassemble, decode, or reverse engineer any licensed program delivered to the user or any portion thereof.

Zebra reserves the right to make changes to any product to improve reliability, function, or design.

Zebra does not assume any product liability arising out of, or in connection with, the application or use of any product, circuit, or application described herein. No license is granted, either expressly or by implication, estoppel, or otherwise under any patent right or patent, covering or relating to any combination, system, apparatus, machine, material, method, or process in which Zebra products might be used. An implied license exists only for equipment, circuits, and subsystems contained in Zebra products.

---

## **Warranty**

For the complete hardware product warranty statement, go to: [www.zebra.com/warranty](http://www.zebra.com/warranty).

## Revision History

Changes to the original guide are listed below:

Change	Date	Description
-01 Rev. A	12/2016	Initial Release.
-02 Rev. A	1/2017	Initial Release with update to cleaning instructions.
-03 Rev. A	2/2017	Added Signature Capture Preferences chapter. Updated sample bar codes.
-04 Rev. A	4/2017	Added: - USB certification logo.  Updated: - Maintenance section - GS1 DataBar-14 to GS1 DataBar Omnidirectional - Zebra copyright statement.
-05 Rev. A	6/2018	Rev. B Software Updates Added: - New Feedback email address. - Grid Matrix parameters - Febraban parameter - USB HID POS (formerly known as Microsoft UWP USB) - Product ID (PID) Type - Product ID (PID) Value - ECLevel - Note to MSI Reduced Quiet Zone (Level 3 not supported by MSI).  Updates: - SSI baud rate hex values for baud rates 230,400, 460,800, and 921,600. - ISBT Concatenation default to Disable (0). - Bar code values for enabling (2) and disabling (0) LED on Good Decode. - Max time value in Hands-Free Decode Session Timeout. - Picklist Mode description. - Trigger Mode, Presentation (Blink) description. - Parameter #744 bar codes.
-06 Rev. A	10/2018	- Added Grid Matrix sample bar code. - Moved 123Scan chapter.
-07 Rev. A	11/2019	Added: - SITA and ARINC parameters. - IBM-485 Specification Version.  Updated: - All URLs (removed 'http'). - Zebra copyright statement.
-08EN Rev. A	05/2020	- Split 123Scan chapter to Chapter 2 123Scan and Software Tools and Chapter 13 Data Formatting: ADF. - Updated 123Scan Requirements section. - Updated Advanced Data Formatting (ADF) section. - Updated Environmental Sealing in Table 4-2. - Added the USB Cert information in Table 4-2.



# TABLE OF CONTENTS

Warranty .....	ii
Revision History .....	iii

## About This Guide

Introduction .....	xvii
Configurations .....	xvii
Related Product Line Configurations .....	xviii
Cables .....	xviii
Chapter Descriptions .....	xviii
Notational Conventions .....	xix
Related Documents .....	xx
Service Information .....	xx
Provide Documentation Feedback .....	xxi

## Chapter 1: Getting Started

Introduction .....	1-1
Interfaces .....	1-2
Unpacking .....	1-2
Setting Up the Digital Scanner .....	1-3
Installing the Interface Cable .....	1-3
Removing the Interface Cable .....	1-4
Connecting Power (if required) .....	1-4
Configuring the Digital Scanner .....	1-4
Accessories .....	1-4

## Chapter 2: 123Scan and Software Tools

Introduction .....	2-1
123Scan .....	2-1
Communication with 123Scan .....	2-2
123Scan Requirements .....	2-2
123Scan Information .....	2-2
Scanner SDK, Other Software Tools, and Videos .....	2-3

**Chapter 3: Data Capture**

Introduction .....	3-1
Beeper Definitions .....	3-2
LED Definitions .....	3-4
Scanning .....	3-5
Scanning in Hands-Free (Presentation) Mode .....	3-5
Scanning in Hand-Held Mode .....	3-7
Aiming .....	3-8
Decode Ranges .....	3-8

**Chapter 4: Maintenance & Technical Specifications**

Introduction .....	4-1
Maintenance .....	4-1
Known Harmful Ingredients .....	4-1
Approved Cleaners .....	4-2
Cleaning the Digital Scanner .....	4-2
Troubleshooting .....	4-3
Report Software Version Bar Code .....	4-6
Technical Specifications .....	4-6
Digital Scanner Signal Descriptions .....	4-9

**Chapter 5: User Preferences & Miscellaneous Options**

Introduction .....	5-1
Setting Parameters .....	5-1
Scanning Sequence Examples .....	5-2
Errors While Scanning .....	5-2
User Preferences/Miscellaneous Options Parameter Defaults .....	5-2
User Preferences .....	5-5
Default Parameters .....	5-5
Parameter Bar Code Scanning .....	5-6
Beeper Volume .....	5-7
Beeper Tone .....	5-8
Beeper Duration .....	5-9
Suppress Power Up Beeps .....	5-9
LED on Good Decode .....	5-10
Direct Decode Indicator .....	5-11
Low Power Mode .....	5-12
Trigger Mode .....	5-15
Hands-Free Mode .....	5-16
Hand-Held Decode Aiming Pattern .....	5-17
Hands-Free (Presentation) Decode Aiming Pattern .....	5-18
Picklist Mode .....	5-19
Continuous Bar Code Read .....	5-20
Unique Bar Code Reporting .....	5-20
Decode Session Timeout .....	5-21
Hands-Free Decode Session Timeout .....	5-21
Timeout Between Decodes, Same Symbol .....	5-22
Timeout Between Decodes, Different Symbols .....	5-22
Decode Mirror Images (Data Matrix Only) .....	5-23
Mobile Phone/Display Mode .....	5-23

PDF Prioritization .....	5-24
PDF Prioritization Timeout .....	5-24
Decoding Illumination .....	5-25
Illumination Brightness .....	5-25
Low Light Scene Detection .....	5-26
Motion Tolerance (Hand-Held Trigger Modes Only) .....	5-27
Product ID (PID) Type .....	5-27
Product ID (PID) Value .....	5-28
ECLevel .....	5-28
Miscellaneous Scanner Parameters .....	5-29
Enter Key .....	5-29
Tab Key .....	5-29
Transmit Code ID Character .....	5-30
Prefix/Suffix Values .....	5-31
Scan Data Transmission Format .....	5-32
FN1 Substitution Values .....	5-34
Transmit “No Read” Message .....	5-35
Unsolicited Heartbeat Interval .....	5-36
Send Versions .....	5-37
Software Version .....	5-37
Serial Number .....	5-37
Manufacturing Information .....	5-37

## Chapter 6: Signature Capture Preferences

Introduction .....	6-1
Setting Parameters .....	6-1
Scanning Sequence Examples .....	6-2
Errors While Scanning .....	6-2
Signature Capture Preferences Parameter Defaults .....	6-2
Signature Capture Preferences .....	6-3
Signature Capture .....	6-3
Signature Capture File Format Selector .....	6-4
Signature Capture Bits Per Pixel .....	6-5
Signature Capture Width .....	6-6
Signature Capture Height .....	6-6
Signature Capture JPEG Quality .....	6-6

## Chapter 7: USB Interface

Introduction .....	7-1
Setting Parameters .....	7-1
Scanning Sequence Examples .....	7-1
Errors While Scanning .....	7-1
Connecting a USB Interface .....	7-2
USB Parameter Defaults .....	7-3
USB Host Parameters .....	7-5
USB Device Type .....	7-5
Symbol Native API (SNAPI) Status Handshaking .....	7-7
USB Keystroke Delay .....	7-7
USB CAPS Lock Override .....	7-8
Bar Codes with Unknown Characters .....	7-8

USB Convert Unknown to Code 39 .....	7-9
USB Fast HID .....	7-9
USB Polling Interval .....	7-10
Keypad Emulation .....	7-12
Quick Keypad Emulation .....	7-12
Keypad Emulation with Leading Zero .....	7-13
USB Keyboard FN1 Substitution .....	7-13
Function Key Mapping .....	7-14
Simulated Caps Lock .....	7-14
Convert Case .....	7-15
USB Static CDC .....	7-15
CDC Beep on <BEL> .....	7-16
USB CDC Host Variant .....	7-16
TGCS (IBM) USB Direct I/O Beep .....	7-19
TGCS (IBM) USB Beep Directive .....	7-19
TGCS (IBM) USB Bar Code Configuration Directive .....	7-20
TGCS (IBM) USB Specification Version .....	7-21
ASCII Character Sets for USB .....	7-21

## Chapter 8: SSI Interface

Introduction .....	8-1
Communication .....	8-1
SSI Transactions .....	8-3
General Data Transactions .....	8-3
Decoded Data Transmission .....	8-4
Communication Summary .....	8-6
RTS/CTS Lines .....	8-6
ACK/NAK Option .....	8-6
Number of Data Bits .....	8-6
Serial Response Timeout .....	8-6
Retries .....	8-6
Baud Rate, Stop Bits, Parity, Response Timeout, ACK/NAK Handshaking .....	8-6
Errors .....	8-6
SSI Communication Notes .....	8-7
Using Time Delay to Low Power Mode with SSI .....	8-7
Encapsulation of RSM Commands/Responses over SSI .....	8-8
Command Structure .....	8-8
Response Structure .....	8-8
Example Transaction .....	8-9
Setting Parameters .....	8-10
Scanning Sequence Examples .....	8-10
Errors While Scanning .....	8-10
Simple Serial Interface Parameter Defaults .....	8-11
SSI Host Parameters .....	8-12
Select SSI Host .....	8-12
Baud Rate .....	8-12
Parity .....	8-14
Check Parity .....	8-15
Stop Bits .....	8-15
Software Handshaking .....	8-16

Host RTS Line State .....	8-17
Decode Data Packet Format .....	8-17
Host Serial Response Timeout .....	8-18
Host Character Timeout .....	8-19
Multipacket Option .....	8-20
Interpacket Delay .....	8-21
Event Reporting .....	8-22
Decode Event .....	8-22
Boot Up Event .....	8-23
Parameter Event .....	8-23

**Chapter 9: RS-232 Interface**

Introduction .....	9-1
Setting Parameters .....	9-1
Scanning Sequence Examples .....	9-2
Errors While Scanning .....	9-2
Connecting an RS-232 Interface .....	9-2
RS-232 Parameter Defaults .....	9-3
RS-232 Host Parameters .....	9-4
RS-232 Host Types .....	9-6
Baud Rate .....	9-8
Parity .....	9-9
Stop Bits .....	9-9
Data Bits .....	9-10
Check Receive Errors .....	9-10
Hardware Handshaking .....	9-11
Software Handshaking .....	9-13
Host Serial Response Timeout .....	9-15
RTS Line State .....	9-16
Beep on <BEL> .....	9-16
Intercharacter Delay .....	9-17
Nixdorf Beep/LED Options .....	9-18
Bar Codes with Unknown Characters .....	9-18
ASCII Character Set for RS-232 .....	9-19

**Chapter 10: IBM 468X / 469X Interface**

Introduction .....	10-1
Setting Parameters .....	10-1
Scanning Sequence Examples .....	10-1
Errors While Scanning .....	10-2
Connecting an IBM 468X/469X Host .....	10-2
IBM Parameter Defaults .....	10-3
IBM Host Parameters .....	10-4
Port Address .....	10-4
Convert Unknown to Code 39 .....	10-5
RS-485 Beep Directive .....	10-5
RS-485 Bar Code Configuration Directive .....	10-6
IBM-485 Specification Version .....	10-6

**Chapter 11: Keyboard Wedge Interface**

Introduction .....	11-1
Setting Parameters .....	11-1
Scanning Sequence Examples .....	11-1
Errors While Scanning .....	11-1
Connecting a Keyboard Wedge Interface .....	11-2
Keyboard Wedge Parameter Defaults .....	11-3
Keyboard Wedge Host Parameters .....	11-4
Keyboard Wedge Host Types .....	11-4
Bar Codes with Unknown Characters .....	11-4
Keystroke Delay .....	11-5
Intra-keystroke Delay .....	11-5
Alternate Numeric Keypad Emulation .....	11-6
Quick Keypad Emulation .....	11-6
Simulated Caps Lock .....	11-7
Caps Lock Override .....	11-7
Convert Case .....	11-8
Function Key Mapping .....	11-8
FN1 Substitution .....	11-9
Send Make and Break .....	11-9
Keyboard Map .....	11-10
ASCII Character Set for Keyboard Wedge .....	11-10

**Chapter 12: Symbologies**

Introduction .....	12-1
Setting Parameters .....	12-1
Scanning Sequence Examples .....	12-2
Errors While Scanning .....	12-2
Symbology Parameter Defaults .....	12-2
Enable/Disable All Code Types .....	12-8
UPC/EAN/JAN .....	12-8
UPC-A .....	12-8
UPC-E .....	12-9
UPC-E1 .....	12-9
EAN-8/JAN-8 .....	12-10
EAN-13/JAN-13 .....	12-10
Bookland EAN .....	12-11
Bookland ISBN Format .....	12-12
ISSN EAN .....	12-12
Decode UPC/EAN/JAN Supplementals .....	12-13
User-Programmable Supplementals .....	12-16
UPC/EAN/JAN Supplemental Redundancy .....	12-16
UPC/EAN/JAN Supplemental AIM ID Format .....	12-17
Transmit UPC-A Check Digit .....	12-18
Transmit UPC-E Check Digit .....	12-18
Transmit UPC-E1 Check Digit .....	12-19
UPC-A Preamble .....	12-20
UPC-E Preamble .....	12-21
UPC-E1 Preamble .....	12-22
Convert UPC-E to UPC-A .....	12-23

Convert UPC-E1 to UPC-A .....	12-23
EAN/JAN Zero Extend .....	12-24
UCC Coupon Extended Code .....	12-24
Coupon Report .....	12-25
UPC Reduced Quiet Zone .....	12-25
Code 128 .....	12-26
Set Lengths for Code 128 .....	12-26
GS1-128 (formerly UCC/EAN-128) .....	12-27
ISBT 128 .....	12-28
ISBT Concatenation .....	12-29
Check ISBT Table .....	12-30
ISBT Concatenation Redundancy .....	12-30
Code 128 <FNC4> .....	12-31
Code 128 Security Level .....	12-31
Code 128 Reduced Quiet Zone .....	12-32
Code 39 .....	12-33
Trioptic Code 39 .....	12-33
Convert Code 39 to Code 32 .....	12-34
Code 32 Prefix .....	12-34
Set Lengths for Code 39 .....	12-35
Code 39 Check Digit Verification .....	12-36
Transmit Code 39 Check Digit .....	12-37
Code 39 Full ASCII Conversion .....	12-37
Code 39 Security Level .....	12-38
Code 39 Reduced Quiet Zone .....	12-40
Code 93 .....	12-40
Set Lengths for Code 93 .....	12-41
Code 11 .....	12-43
Set Lengths for Code 11 .....	12-43
Code 11 Check Digit Verification .....	12-45
Transmit Code 11 Check Digits .....	12-46
Interleaved 2 of 5 (ITF) .....	12-46
Set Lengths for Interleaved 2 of 5 .....	12-47
I 2 of 5 Check Digit Verification .....	12-49
Transmit I 2 of 5 Check Digit .....	12-50
Convert I 2 of 5 to EAN-13 .....	12-50
Febraban .....	12-51
I 2 of 5 Security Level .....	12-52
I 2 of 5 Reduced Quiet Zone .....	12-53
Discrete 2 of 5 (DTF) .....	12-53
Set Lengths for Discrete 2 of 5 .....	12-54
Codabar (NW - 7) .....	12-56
Set Lengths for Codabar .....	12-56
CLSI Editing .....	12-58
NOTIS Editing .....	12-58
Codabar Upper or Lower Case Start/Stop Characters .....	12-59
MSI .....	12-59
Set Lengths for MSI .....	12-60
MSI Check Digits .....	12-62
Transmit MSI Check Digit(s) .....	12-62

MSI Check Digit Algorithm .....	12-63
MSI Reduced Quiet Zone .....	12-63
Chinese 2 of 5 .....	12-64
Matrix 2 of 5 .....	12-64
Set Lengths for Matrix 2 of 5 .....	12-65
Matrix 2 of 5 Check Digit .....	12-67
Transmit Matrix 2 of 5 Check Digit .....	12-67
Korean 3 of 5 .....	12-68
Inverse 1D .....	12-69
GS1 DataBar .....	12-70
GS1 DataBar Omnidirectional (formerly GS1 DataBar-14) .....	12-70
GS1 DataBar Limited .....	12-70
GS1 DataBar Expanded .....	12-71
Convert GS1 DataBar to UPC/EAN/JAN .....	12-71
GS1 DataBar Limited Margin Check .....	12-72
GS1 DataBar Security Level .....	12-73
Symbology-Specific Security Features .....	12-74
Redundancy Level .....	12-74
Security Level .....	12-76
1D Quiet Zone Level .....	12-77
Intercharacter Gap Size .....	12-78
Composite .....	12-78
Composite CC-C .....	12-78
Composite CC-A/B .....	12-79
Composite TLC-39 .....	12-79
Composite Inverse .....	12-80
UPC Composite Mode .....	12-81
Composite Beep Mode .....	12-82
GS1-128 Emulation Mode for UCC/EAN Composite Codes .....	12-82
2D Symbologies .....	12-83
PDF417 .....	12-83
MicroPDF417 .....	12-83
Code 128 Emulation .....	12-84
Data Matrix .....	12-85
GS1 Data Matrix .....	12-85
Data Matrix Inverse .....	12-86
Decode Data Matrix Mirror Images .....	12-87
Maxicode .....	12-88
QR Code .....	12-88
GS1 QR .....	12-89
MicroQR .....	12-89
Aztec .....	12-90
Aztec Inverse .....	12-91
Han Xin .....	12-92
Han Xin Inverse .....	12-92
Grid Matrix .....	12-93
Grid Matrix Inverse .....	12-93
Grid Matrix Mirror .....	12-94
Escape Characters .....	12-94
Flush Macro PDF Buffer .....	12-95

Abort Macro PDF Entry .....	12-95
Postal Codes .....	12-96
US Postnet .....	12-96
US Planet .....	12-96
Transmit US Postal Check Digit .....	12-97
UK Postal .....	12-97
Transmit UK Postal Check Digit .....	12-98
Japan Postal .....	12-98
Australia Post .....	12-99
Australia Post Format .....	12-100
Netherlands KIX Code .....	12-101
USPS 4CB/One Code/Intelligent Mail .....	12-101
UPU FICS Postal .....	12-102
Mailmark .....	12-102
<b>Chapter 13: Data Formatting: ADF</b>	
Introduction .....	13-1
Advanced Data Formatting (ADF) .....	13-1
<b>Appendix A: Standard Default Parameters</b>	
<b>Appendix B: Country Codes</b>	
Introduction .....	B-1
USB and Keyboard Wedge Country Keyboard Types (Country Codes) .....	B-2
<b>Appendix C: Country Code Pages</b>	
Introduction .....	C-1
Country Code Page Defaults .....	C-1
Country Code Page Bar Codes .....	C-5
<b>Appendix D: CKJ Decode Control</b>	
Introduction .....	D-1
CJK Control Parameters .....	D-2
Unicode Output Control .....	D-2
CJK Output Method to Windows Host .....	D-3
Non-CJK UTF Bar Code Output .....	D-5
Unicode/CJK Decode Setup with Windows Host .....	D-7
Setting Up the Windows Registry Table for Unicode Universal Output .....	D-7
Adding CJK IME on Windows .....	D-7
Selecting the Simplified Chinese Input Method on the Host .....	D-8
Selecting the Traditional Chinese Input Method on the Host .....	D-9
<b>Appendix E: Programming Reference</b>	
Symbol Code Identifiers .....	E-1
AIM Code Identifiers .....	E-3

**Appendix F: Sample Bar Codes**

UPC/EAN .....	F-1
UPC-A, 100% .....	F-1
UPC-A with 2-digit Add-on .....	F-1
UPC-A with 5-digit Add-on .....	F-2
UPC-E .....	F-2
UPC-E with 2-digit Add-on .....	F-2
UPC-E with 5-digit Add-on .....	F-3
EAN-8 .....	F-3
EAN-13, 100% .....	F-3
EAN-13 with 2-digit Add-on .....	F-4
EAN-13 with 5-digit Add-on .....	F-4
Code 128 .....	F-4
GS1-128 .....	F-5
Code 39 .....	F-5
Code 93 .....	F-5
Code 11 with 2 Check Digits .....	F-6
Interleaved 2 of 5 .....	F-6
MSI with 2 Check Digits .....	F-6
Chinese 2 of 5 .....	F-7
Matrix 2 of 5 .....	F-7
Korean 3 of 5 .....	F-7
GS1 DataBar .....	F-8
GS1 DataBar Omnidirectional (formerly GS1 DataBar-14) .....	F-8
GS1 DataBar Limited .....	F-8
GS1 DataBar Expanded .....	F-8
2D Symbologies .....	F-9
PDF417 .....	F-9
Data Matrix .....	F-9
GS1 Data Matrix .....	F-10
Maxicode .....	F-10
QR Code .....	F-10
GS1 QR .....	F-11
MicroQR .....	F-11
Aztec .....	F-11
Grid Matrix .....	F-12
Han Xin .....	F-12
Postal Codes .....	F-13
US Postnet .....	F-13
UK Postal .....	F-13
Japan Postal .....	F-13
Australian Post .....	F-14

**Appendix G: Numeric Bar Codes**

Numeric Bar Codes .....	G-1
Cancel .....	G-3

**Appendix H: Alphanumeric Bar Codes**

Cancel .....	H-1
--------------	-----

Alphanumeric Bar Codes .....	H-2
------------------------------	-----

## **Appendix I: ASCII Character Sets**

### **Appendix J: Communication Protocol Functionality**

Functionality Supported via Communication (Cable) Interface .....	J-1
---	-----

## **Appendix K: Signature Capture Code**

Introduction .....	K-1
Code Structure .....	K-1
Signature Capture Area .....	K-1
CapCode Pattern Structure .....	K-2
Start / Stop Patterns .....	K-2
Dimensions .....	K-3
Data Format .....	K-3
Additional Capabilities .....	K-4
Signature Boxes .....	K-4

## **Appendix L: Non-Parameter Attributes**

Introduction .....	L-1
Attributes .....	L-1
Model Number .....	L-1
Serial Number .....	L-1
Date of Manufacture .....	L-2
Date of First Programming .....	L-2
Configuration Filename .....	L-2
Beeper/LED .....	L-3
Parameter Defaults .....	L-4
Beep on Next Bootup .....	L-4
Reboot .....	L-4
Host Trigger Session .....	L-4
Firmware Version .....	L-5
ImageKit Version .....	L-5

## **Index**



# ABOUT THIS GUIDE

---

## Introduction

The *DS2208 Product Reference Guide* provides general instructions for setting up, operating, maintaining, and troubleshooting the DS2208 series digital scanner.

---

## Configurations

This guide includes the DS2208 series digital scanner configurations listed in [Table A](#).

**Table A:** *Digital Scanner Configurations*

Model Configuration	Description
DS2208-SR00006ZZWW	DS2208: Area Imager, Standard Range, Corded, Nova White
DS2208-SR00007ZZWW	DS2208: Area Imager, Standard Range, Corded, Twilight Black
DS2208-TT00007ZZJP	DS2208: Area Imager, Toshiba Tec, Corded, Twilight Black - Japan Only
DS2208-SR00007ZZK	DS2208: Area Imager, Standard Range, Corded, Twilight Black - India and S. Korea Only

## Related Product Line Configurations

The product configurations related to the DS2208 digital scanner are as follows.

- ✓ **NOTES** Check Solution Builder for additional information regarding all available accessories, and the latest available configurations.

**Table B: Accessories for the Digital Scanner**

Product ID	Description
20-71043-04R	Gooseneck Intellistand - Black
STND-GS00UNC-04	Universal Gooseneck Intellistand – Black
21-71043-04R	Cup (Black)
20-67176-01R	Desktop Holder
11-66553-06R	Wall Mount Holder

## Cables

The full list of supported cables can be found at:

[partnerportal.zebra.com/PartnerPortal/product\\_services/downloads\\_z/barcode\\_scanners/Universal-Cable-Guide-Bar-Code-Scanners.xlsx](http://partnerportal.zebra.com/PartnerPortal/product_services/downloads_z/barcode_scanners/Universal-Cable-Guide-Bar-Code-Scanners.xlsx).

---

## Chapter Descriptions

Topics covered in this guide are as follows:

- *Chapter 1, Getting Started* provides a product overview, unpacking instructions, and cable connection information.
- *Chapter 2, 123Scan and Software Tools* provides a brief description of the Zebra software tools available for customizing scanner operation.
- *Chapter 3, Data Capture* provides beeper and LED definitions, techniques involved in scanning bar codes, general instructions and tips about scanning, and decode ranges.
- *Chapter 4, Maintenance & Technical Specifications* provides suggested digital scanner maintenance, troubleshooting, technical specifications, and signal descriptions (pinouts).
- *Chapter 5, User Preferences & Miscellaneous Options* describes each user preference feature and provides programming bar codes for selecting these features.
- *Chapter 6, Signature Capture Preferences* describes signature capture preference features and provides programming bar codes for selecting these features.
- *Chapter 7, USB Interface* describes how to set up the digital scanner with a USB host.
- *Chapter 8, SSI Interface* describes the system requirements of the Simple Serial Interface (SSI), which provides a communications link between Zebra decoders and a serial host.
- *Chapter 9, RS-232 Interface* describes how to set up the digital scanner with an RS-232 host.
- *Chapter 10, IBM 468X / 469X Interface* describes how to set up the digital scanner with an IBM 468X/469X host.

- [Chapter 11, Keyboard Wedge Interface](#) describes how to set up a keyboard wedge interface with the digital scanner.
- [Chapter 12, Symbologies](#) describes all symbology features and provides programming bar codes for selecting these features for the digital scanner.
- [Chapter 13, Data Formatting: ADF](#) briefly describes the Zebra features available for customizing scanner operation.
- [Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters](#) provides a table of all host devices and miscellaneous scanner defaults.
- [Appendix B, Country Codes](#) provides bar codes for programming the country keyboard type for the USB keyboard (HID) device and the keyboard wedge host.
- [Appendix C, Country Code Pages](#) provides bar codes for selecting code pages for the country keyboard type.
- [Appendix D, CKJ Decode Control](#) describes control parameters for Unicode/CJK (Chinese, Japanese, Korean) bar code decode through USB HID Keyboard Emulation mode.
- [Appendix E, Programming Reference](#) provides a table of AIM code identifiers, ASCII character conversions, and keyboard maps.
- [Appendix F, Sample Bar Codes](#) includes sample bar codes of various code types.
- [Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes](#) includes the numeric bar codes to scan for parameters requiring specific numeric values.
- [Appendix H, Alphanumeric Bar Codes](#) includes the alphanumeric bar codes to scan for parameters requiring specific alphanumeric values.
- [Appendix I, ASCII Character Sets](#) provides ASCII character value tables.
- [Appendix J, Communication Protocol Functionality](#) lists supported scanner functionality by communication protocol.
- [Appendix K, Signature Capture Code](#) describes CapCode, a special pattern that encloses a signature area on a document and allows the scanner to capture a signature.
- [Appendix L, Non-Parameter Attributes](#) defines non-parameter attributes.

---

## Notational Conventions

The following conventions are used in this document:

- Unless stated otherwise, **DS2208** refers to all configurations.
- *Italics* are used to highlight the following:
  - Chapters and sections in this and related documents
  - Dialog box, window and screen names
  - Drop-down list and list box names
  - Check box and radio button names
- **Bold** text is used to highlight the following:
  - Key names on a keypad
  - Button names on a screen.

- bullets (•) indicate:
  - Action items
  - Lists of alternatives
  - Lists of required steps that are not necessarily sequential
- Sequential lists (e.g., those that describe step-by-step procedures) appear as numbered lists.
- Throughout the programming bar code menus, asterisks (\*) are used to denote default parameter settings.



## Related Documents

- *DS2208 Series Quick Start Guide*, p/n MN-002873-xx - provides general information for getting started with the DS2208 digital scanner, and includes basic set up and operation instructions.
- *Advanced Data Formatting Programmer Guide*, p/n 72E-69680-xx - provides information on ADF, a means of customizing data before transmission to a host.
- *Attribute Data Dictionary*, p/n 72E-149786-xx defines attribute numbers (device configuration parameters, monitored data, and born-on information) and describes management of various attribute domains for bar code scanners and OEM engines.
- *ToshibaTEC Programmer's Guide*, p/n MN-002707-xx - provides information on programming the Toshiba TEC USB device type.

For the latest version of this guide and all guides, go to: [www.zebra.com/support](http://www.zebra.com/support).

## Service Information

If you have a problem using the equipment, contact your facility's technical or systems support. If there is a problem with the equipment, they will contact the Zebra Support & Downloads website at: [www.zebra.com/support](http://www.zebra.com/support).

When contacting support, please have the following information available:

- Serial number of the unit
- Model number or product name
- Software type and version number

Zebra responds to calls by e-mail, telephone or fax within the time limits set forth in service agreements.

If your problem cannot be solved by support, you may need to return your equipment for servicing and will be given specific directions. Zebra is not responsible for any damages incurred during shipment if the approved shipping container is not used. Shipping the units improperly can possibly void the warranty.

If you purchased your business product from a Zebra business partner, please contact that business partner for support.

---

## Provide Documentation Feedback

If you have comments, questions, or suggestions about this guide, send an email to [EVM-Techdocs@zebra.com](mailto:EVM-Techdocs@zebra.com).



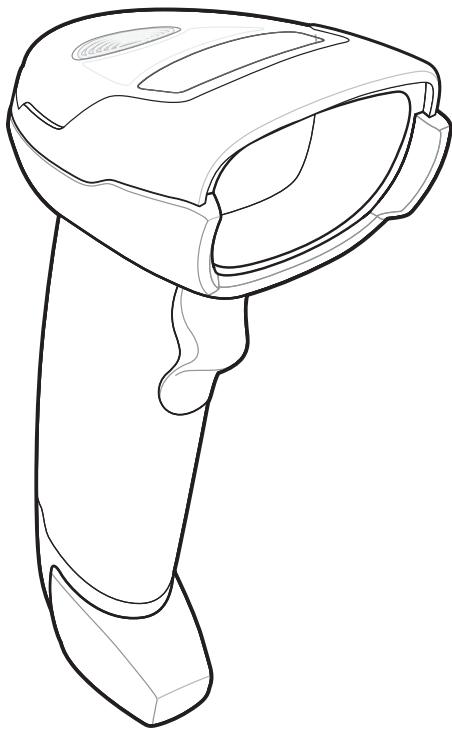
# CHAPTER 1 GETTING STARTED

---

## Introduction

2D bar codes have made their way to the Point of Sale (POS), appearing on everything from customer purchased items to printed and electronic coupons and loyalty cards. 1D scanners cannot capture the new 2D codes, leading to exceptions that slow down the check-out process. The DS2208 digital imager scanner scans both 1D and 2D bar codes and does not compromise performance or features.

The DS2208 is easy to deploy, easy to use, and easy to manage - delivering affordable simplicity with its hands-free/hand-held design. The scanner's Intellistand seamlessly accommodates both counter top and hand-held use.



**Figure 1-1** DS2208 Digital Scanner

## Interfaces

The DS2208 digital scanner supports:

- USB connection to a host. The digital scanner automatically detects the USB host interface type and uses the default setting (**USB Keyboard HID**). If the default (\*) does not meet your requirements, select another USB interface type by scanning programming bar code menus. See [Appendix B, Country Codes](#) for the interface supported international keyboards (for Windows® environment).
- Standard RS-232 connection to a host. The digital scanner automatically detects the RS-232 host interface type and uses the default setting (**Standard RS-232**). If the default (\*) does not meet your requirements, select another RS-232 interface type by scanning programming bar code menus.
- Connection to IBM 468X/469X hosts. The digital scanner automatically detects the IBM host interface type but does not select a default setting. Scan bar code menus to set up communication of the digital scanner with the IBM terminal.
- Keyboard Wedge connection to a host. The host interprets scanned data as keystrokes. The digital scanner automatically detects the Keyboard Wedge host interface type and uses the default setting (**IBM AT Notebook**). If the default (\*) does not meet your requirements, scan [IBM PC/AT & IBM PC Compatibles on page 11-4](#). See [Appendix B, Country Codes](#) for the interface supported international keyboards (for Windows® environment).
- Configuration via 123Scan.

 **NOTE** For a list of supported scanner functionality by communication protocol, see [Appendix J, Communication Protocol Functionality](#).

## Unpacking

Remove the digital scanner from its packing and inspect it for damage. If the scanner was damaged in transit, contact support. See [page xx](#) for information. **KEEP THE PACKING**. It is the approved shipping container; use this to return the equipment for servicing.

## Setting Up the Digital Scanner

### Installing the Interface Cable

1. Insert the interface cable modular connector into the interface cable port on the rear of the digital scanner until you hear a click.

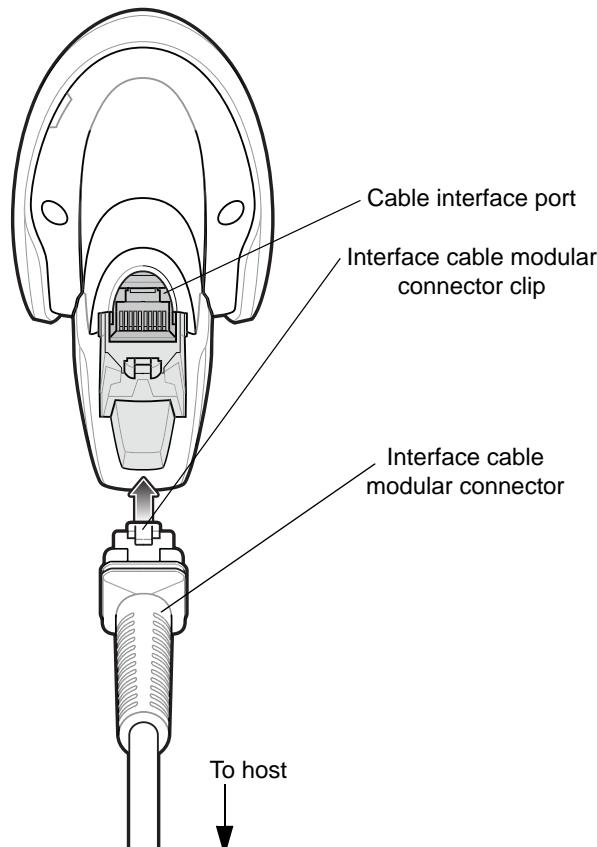


Figure 1-2 *Installing the Cable - DS2208*



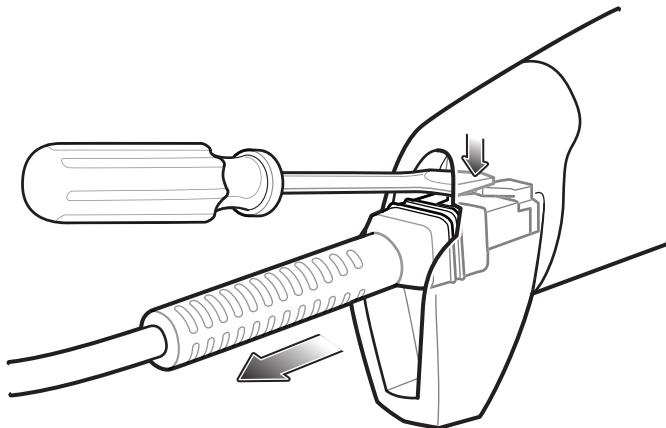
**IMPORTANT** Insert the cable into the cable interface port until a click sounds.

If you already have existing non shielded cables from legacy products (such as the LS2208) they can be reused. However, be aware that the shielded cables provide improved ESD performance. For regional information about cables and cable compatibility, go to the Zebra Partner Portal at: [partnerportal.zebra.com/PartnerPortal/product\\_services/downloads\\_z/barcode\\_scanners/Universal-Cable-Guide-Bar-Code-Scanners.xlsx](http://partnerportal.zebra.com/PartnerPortal/product_services/downloads_z/barcode_scanners/Universal-Cable-Guide-Bar-Code-Scanners.xlsx).

2. Gently tug the cable to ensure the connector is secure.
3. Connect the other end of the interface cable to the host (see the specific host chapter for information on host connections).

## Removing the Interface Cable

1. Press the cable's modular connector clip through the access slot in the digital scanner's base.



**Figure 1-3 Removing the Cable**

2. Carefully slide out the cable.
3. Follow the steps for [Installing the Interface Cable](#) to connect a new cable.

## Connecting Power (if required)

If the host does not provide power to the digital scanner, connect an external power supply.

1. Plug the power supply into the power jack on the interface cable.
2. Plug the other end of the power supply into an AC outlet.

## Configuring the Digital Scanner

To configure the digital scanner use the bar codes included in this manual, or use the 123Scan<sup>2</sup> configuration program. See [Chapter 5, User Preferences & Miscellaneous Options](#), and [Chapter 12, Symbologies](#) for information about programming the digital scanner using bar code menus. See [Chapter 2, 123Scan and Software Tools](#) for information on using this configuration program. Also see each host-specific chapter to set up connection to a specific host type.

## Accessories

The digital scanner ships with the *DS2208 Quick Start Guide*. The following required accessories must be ordered:

- Interface cable for the appropriate interface. For example, a shielded connector cable when connecting via USB. For regional information about cables and cable compatibility, go to the Zebra Partner Portal at: [partnerportal.zebra.com/PartnerPortal/product\\_services/downloads\\_z/barcode\\_scanners/Universal-Cable-Guide-Bar-Code-Scanners.xlsx](http://partnerportal.zebra.com/PartnerPortal/product_services/downloads_z/barcode_scanners/Universal-Cable-Guide-Bar-Code-Scanners.xlsx).

**✓ *IMPORTANT*** If you already have existing non shielded cables from legacy products (such as the LS2208) they can be reused. However, be aware that the shielded cables provide improved ESD performance.

- Universal power supply, if the interface requires this.
- Gooseneck Intellistand for hands-free operation of the DS2208.

For additional items, contact a local Zebra representative or business partner.

# CHAPTER 2 123SCAN AND SOFTWARE TOOLS

---

## Introduction

This chapter briefly describes the Zebra software tools available for customizing scanner operation.

---

## 123Scan

123Scan is a software tool that simplifies scanner setup and more.

Intuitive enough for first time users, the 123Scan wizard guides users through a streamlined setup process. Settings are saved in a configuration file that can be printed as a single programming bar code for scanning, emailed to a smart phone for scanning from its screen, or downloaded to the scanner using a USB cable.

Through 123Scan a user can:

- Configure a scanner using a wizard
- Program the following scanner settings:
  - Beeper tone / volume settings
  - Enable / disable symbologies
  - Communication settings
- Modify data before transmission to a host using:
  - Advanced Data Formatting (ADF) - Scan one bar code per trigger pull
- Load parameter settings to a scanner via:
  - Bar code scanning:
    - Scan a paper bar code
    - Scan a bar code from a PC screen
    - Scan a bar code from a smart phone screen
  - Download over a USB cable:
    - Load settings to one scanner
    - Stage up to 10 scanners simultaneously

- Validate scanner setup:
  - View scanned data within the utility's Data View screen
  - Capture an image and save to a PC
  - Review settings using the Parameter Report
  - Clone settings from an already deployed scanner
- Upgrade scanner firmware:
  - Load settings to one scanner
  - Stage up to 10 scanners simultaneously with a power USB hub
- Generate the following reports:
  - Parameter Report - Lists parameters programmed within a configuration file
  - Activity Report - Lists activities performed on a scanner(s)
  - Inventory Report - Lists scanner asset tracking information
  - Validation Report - Printout of scanned data

For more information go to: [www.zebra.com/123Scan](http://www.zebra.com/123Scan).

## Communication with 123Scan

To communicate with the 123Scan program which runs on a host computer running a Windows 7 operating system, use a USB cable to connect the scanner to the host computer.

## 123Scan Requirements

- Host computer with Windows 7
- Scanner
- USB cable

## 123Scan Information

For more information on 123Scan, go to: [www.zebra.com/123Scan](http://www.zebra.com/123Scan)

For a 1 minute tour of 123Scan, go to: [www.zebra.com/ScannerHowToVideos](http://www.zebra.com/ScannerHowToVideos)

To download any of the following free tools, go to: [www.zebra.com/scannersoftware](http://www.zebra.com/scannersoftware)

- 123Scan configuration utility (described in this chapter)
- Scanner Control App (available on Android Play, iOS App stores, and Zebra AppGallery)
- How-to-videos

## Scanner SDK, Other Software Tools, and Videos

Tackle all your scanner programming needs with our diversified set of software tools. Whether you need to simply stage a device, or develop a fully featured application with image and data capture as well as asset management, these tools help you every step of the way. To download any of the following free tools, go to:

[www.zebra.com/scannersoftware](http://www.zebra.com/scannersoftware).

- 123Scan configuration utility (described in this chapter)
- Scanner SDK for Windows
- How-to videos
- Virtual COM port driver
- OPOS driver
- JPOS driver
- Scanner user documentation.



**NOTE** For a list of SDK supported scanner functionality by communication protocol, see [\*Appendix J, Communication Protocol Functionality\*](#).

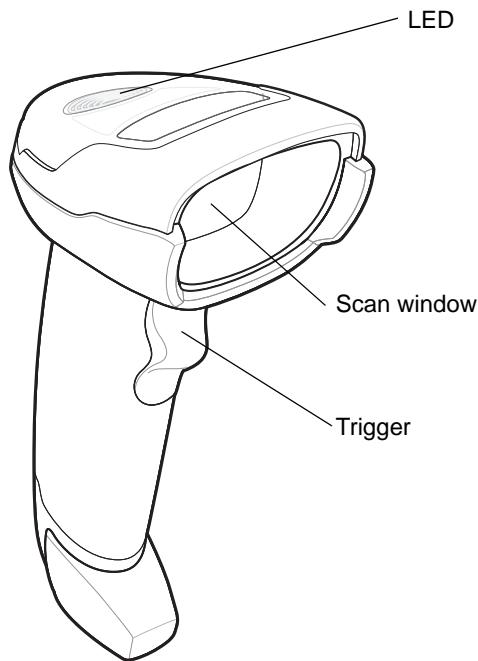


# CHAPTER 3 DATA CAPTURE

---

## Introduction

This chapter provides beeper and LED definitions, techniques involved in scanning bar codes, general instructions and tips about scanning, and decode ranges.



**Figure 3-1** *Parts of the DS2208*

## Beeper Definitions

The digital scanner issues different beep sequences and patterns to indicate status. *Table 3-1* defines beep sequences that occur during both normal scanning and while programming the digital scanner.

**Table 3-1 Beeper Definitions**

Beeper Sequence	Indication
<b>Standard Use</b>	
Low/medium/high beeps	Power up.
Short beep, tone programmable	A bar code symbol was decoded (if decode beeper is enabled).
4 long low beeps	Transmission error.
5 low beeps	Conversion or format error.
Low/low/low/extralow beeps	RS-232 receive error.
High beep	The digital scanner detected a <BEL> character over RS-232.
<b>Parameter Menu Scanning</b>	
Low/high beeps	Input error; incorrect bar code, programming sequence, or <b>Cancel</b> scanned.
High/low beeps	Keyboard parameter selected. Enter value using numeric bar codes.
High/low/high/low beeps	Successful program exit with change in parameter setting.
<b>ADF Programming</b>	
Low/low beeps	Enter another alphabetic character or scan the <b>End of Message</b> bar code.
Low/high/high beeps	All rules are deleted.
Low/high/low/high beeps	Out of rule memory. Erase some existing rules, then try to save rule again.
Low/high/low beeps	Cancel rule entry. Rule entry mode exited because of an error or the user asked to exit rule entry.
Low/high beeps	Entry error, wrong bar code scanned, or criteria/action list is too long for a rule. Re-enter criterion or action.
Low beep	Delete last saved rule. The current rule is left intact.
High/high beeps	ADF criteria or action is expected. Enter another criterion or action, or scan the <b>Save Rule</b> bar code.
High/low/low beeps	All criteria or actions cleared for current rule, continue entering rule.
High/low/high/low beeps	Rule saved. Rule entry mode exited.
<b>Macro PDF</b>	
2 low beeps	MPDF sequence buffered.
2 long low beeps	File ID error. A bar code not in the current MPDF sequence was scanned.

**Table 3-1 Beeper Definitions (Continued)**

Beeper Sequence	Indication
3 long low beeps	Out of memory. There is not enough buffer space to store the current MPDF symbol.
4 long low beeps	Bad symbology. Scanned a 1D or 2D bar code in a MPDF sequence, a duplicate MPDF label, a label in an incorrect order, or trying to transmit an empty or illegal MPDF field.
5 long low beeps	Flushing MPDF buffer.
Low/high beeps	Flushing an already empty MPDF buffer.
Fast warble beep	Aborting MPDF sequence.
<b>Host Specific</b>	
<b>USB only</b>	
Low/medium/high beeps upon scanning a USB device type	Communication with the host must be established before the digital scanner can operate at the highest power level.
Low/medium/high beeps occur more than once	The USB host can put the digital scanner in a state where power to the scanner is cycled on and off more than once. This is normal and usually happens when the PC cold boots.
<b>RS-232 only</b>	
1 short high beep	A <BEL> character is received and Beep on <BEL> is enabled.

## LED Definitions

In addition to beep sequences, the digital scanner uses a two-color LED to indicate status. *Table 3-2* defines LED colors that display during scanning.

**Table 3-2 Standard LED Definitions**

LED	Indication
<b>Hand-Held Scanning Standard Use</b>	
Green	A bar code was successfully decoded.
Red	Transmission error, conversion or format error, or RS-232 receive error.
Off	No power is applied to the digital scanner, or the scanner is on and ready to scan.
<b>Hands-Free (Presentation) Scanning Standard Use</b>	
Green	The scanner is on and ready to scan.
Momentarily Off	A bar code was successfully decoded.
Red	Transmission error, conversion or format error, or RS-232 receive error.
Off	No power is applied to the digital scanner, or the scanner is in low power mode.
<b>Parameter Programming</b>	
Green	Number expected. Enter value using numeric bar codes. Successful program exit with change in parameter setting.
Red	Input error: incorrect bar code, programming sequence, or Cancel scanned.
<b>Firmware Update</b>	
Red, alternating between solid and fast blinking	Firmware download is completing (user should wait for this indicator to complete before using the scanner). This indicator is followed by a low/medium/high power up beep.
<b>ADF Programming</b>	
Green	Enter another digit. Add leading zeros to the front if necessary. Enter another alphabetic character or scan the <b>End of Message</b> bar code. All criteria or actions cleared for current rule, continue entering rule. Delete last saved rule. The current rule is left intact. All rules deleted.
Blinking Green	Enter another criterion or action, or scan the <b>Save Rule</b> bar code.
Green after Blinking	Rule saved. Rule entry mode exited. Cancel rule entry. Rule entry mode exited because of an error or the user asked to exit rule entry.
Red	Out of rule memory. Erase some existing rules, then try to save rule again. Entry error, wrong bar code scanned, or criteria/action list is too long for a rule. Re-enter criterion or action.

## Scanning

The DS2208 digital scanner is in hands-free (presentation) mode when it is placed in the gooseneck Intellistand. In this mode, the digital scanner operates in continuous (constant-on) mode, where it automatically decodes a bar code presented in its field of view.

When the digital scanner is not used for a user-definable period of time, it enters a low power mode in which the LEDs are turned off or illumination blinks at a low duty cycle until the digital scanner detects an image change (e.g. motion).

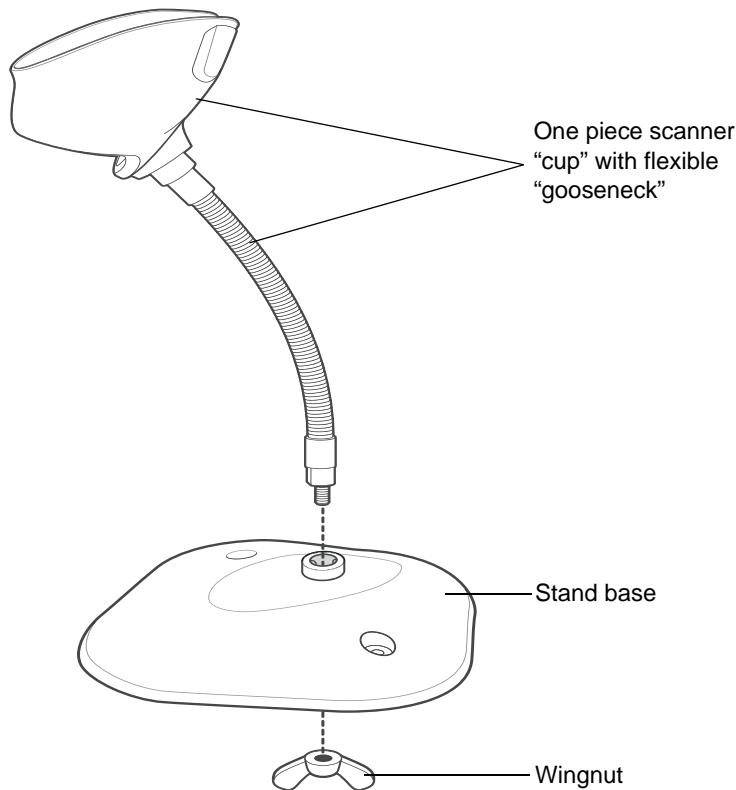
### Scanning in Hands-Free (Presentation) Mode

The optional stand adds greater flexibility to DS2208 scanning operation. When the scanner is seated in the stand's "cup," the scanner's built-in sensor places the scanner in hands-free (presentation) mode. When the scanner is removed from the stand, it automatically switches to its programmed hand-held triggered mode.

#### Assemble the Stand

To assemble the stand:

1. Unscrew the wing nut from the bottom of the one piece scanner "cup."

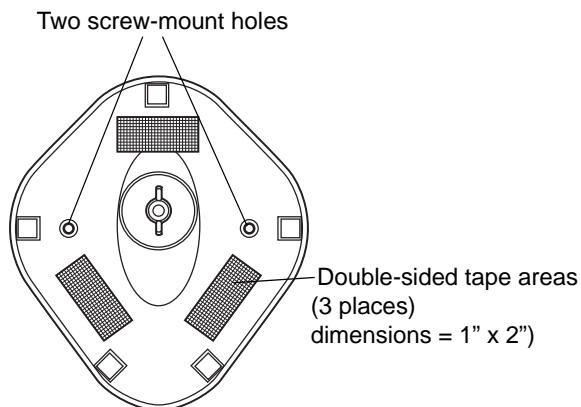


**Figure 3-2 Assembling the Stand**

2. Fit the bottom of the gooseneck piece into the opening on the top of the stand base.
3. Tighten the wing nut underneath the base to secure the cup and neck piece to the base.
4. Bend the neck to the desired position for scanning.

## Mounting the Stand (optional)

You can attach the base of the scanner's stand to a flat surface using two screws or double-sided tape (not provided).



**Figure 3-3 Mounting the Stand**

### Screw Mount

1. Position the assembled base on a flat surface.
2. Screw one #10 wood screw into each screw-mount hole until the base of the stand is secure (see [Figure 3-3](#)).

### Tape Mount

1. Peel the paper liner off one side of each piece of tape and place the sticky surface over each of the three rectangular tape holders.
2. Peel the paper liner off the exposed sides of each piece of tape and press the stand on a flat surface until it is secure (see [Figure 3-3](#)).

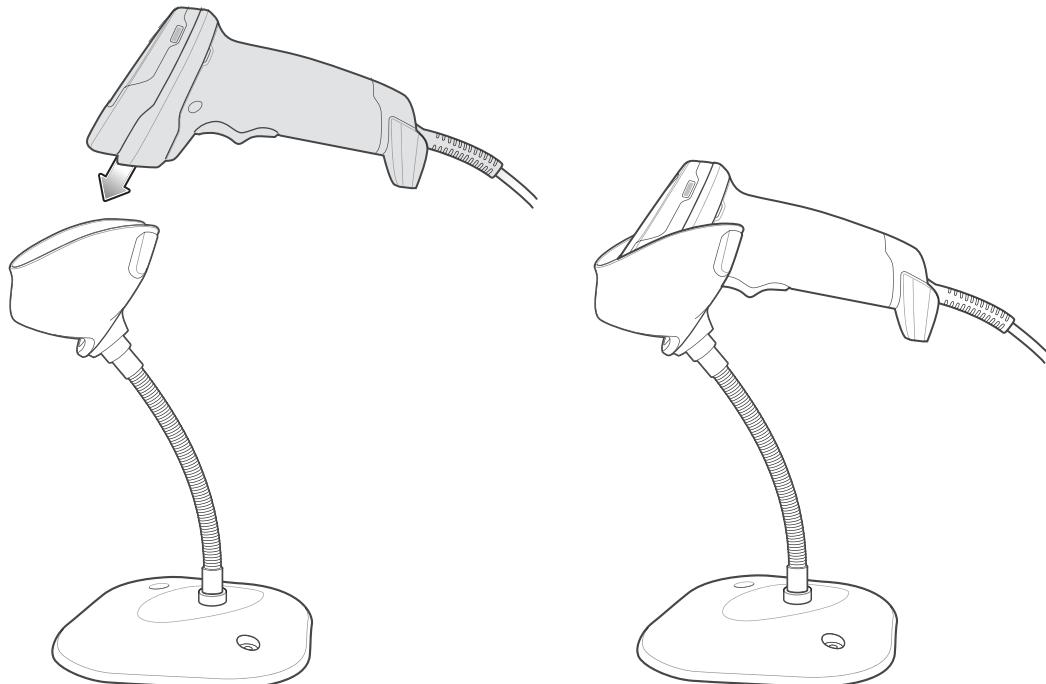
## Scanning with the Stand

When the digital scanner is placed in the gooseneck Intellistand it operates in continuous (constant-on) mode, where it automatically decodes a bar code presented in its field of view.

To operate the scanner in the stand:

1. Ensure the scanner is properly connected to the host (see the appropriate host chapter for information on host connections).

2. Insert the scanner in the gooseneck Intellistand by placing the front of the scanner into the stand's "cup."

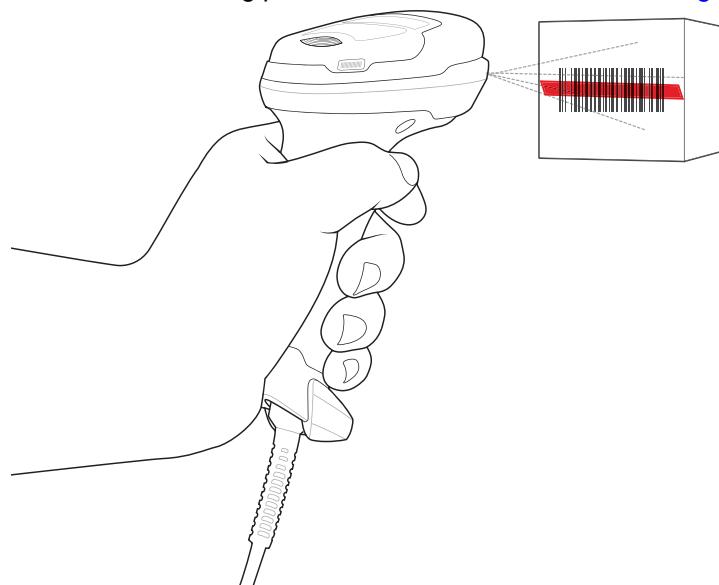


**Figure 3-4** Inserting the Scanner in the Gooseneck Intellistand

3. Adjust the scan angle by bending the stand's flexible "gooseneck" body.
4. Present the bar code. Upon successful decode, the scanner beeps and the LED momentarily shuts off. For more information about beeper and LED definitions, see [Table 3-1](#) and [Table 3-2](#).

## Scanning in Hand-Held Mode

1. Place the aiming pattern over the bar code. See [Aiming](#) below.



**Figure 3-5** Aiming Pattern on Bar Code

2. Press and hold the trigger until either:
  - a. The digital scanner reads the bar code. The digital scanner beeps, the LED flashes, and the scan line turns off.
  - Or
  - b. The digital scanner does not read the bar code and the scan line turns off.
3. Release the trigger.

## Aiming

When scanning, the digital scanner projects a red scan line which allows positioning the bar code within its field of view, omnidirectionally. See [Decode Ranges on page 3-8](#) for the proper distance to achieve between the digital scanner and a bar code.



**Figure 3-6** Scanning Orientation with Aiming Line

The aiming line is smaller when the digital scanner is closer to the symbol and larger when it is farther from the symbol. Scan symbols with smaller bars or elements (mil size) closer to the digital scanner, and those with larger bars or elements (mil size) farther from the digital scanner.

The digital scanner beeps to indicate that it successfully decoded the bar code. For more information on beeper and LED definitions, see [Table 3-1](#) and [Table 3-2](#).

---

## Decode Ranges

**Table 3-3** DS2208 Typical Decode Ranges

Bar Code Type	Symbol Density	DS2208 Typical Working Ranges	
		Near (in/cm)	Far (in/cm)
Code 39	5 mil	.2 in/.5 cm	6.0 in/15.2 cm
Code 39	10 mil	.0 in/.0 cm	13.0 in/33.0 cm
Code 128	5 mil	.6 in/1.5 cm	4.0 in/10.2 cm
Code 128	7.5 mil	.0 in/.0 cm	7.0 in/17.8 cm
PDF417	6.7 mil	.8 in/2.0 cm	5.7 in/14.5 cm
UPC	13 mil (100%)	.5 in/1.3 cm	14.5 in/36.8 cm
Data Matrix	10 mil	.3 in/.8 cm	6.2 in/15.7 cm
QR	20 mil	.0 in/.0 cm	11.0 in/27.9 cm

\* Printing resolution, contrast, and ambient light dependent.

# CHAPTER 4 MAINTENANCE & TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

---

## Introduction

This chapter provides suggested digital scanner maintenance, troubleshooting, technical specifications, and signal descriptions (pinouts).

---

## Maintenance



**IMPORTANT** Use pre-moistened wipes and do not allow liquid cleaner to pool.

### Known Harmful Ingredients

The following chemicals are known to damage the plastics on Zebra scanners and should not come in contact with the device:

- Acetone
- Ammonia solutions
- Aqueous or alcoholic alkaline solutions
- Aromatic and chlorinated hydrocarbons
- Benzene
- Carboxylic acid
- Compounds of amines or ammonia
- Ethanolamine
- Ethers
- Isopropyl alcohol 70% (including wipes)
- Ketones
- TB-lysoform
- Toluene
- Trichloroethylene.

## Approved Cleaners

- Hydrogen peroxide
- Mild dish soap.

## Cleaning the Digital Scanner

Routinely cleaning the exit window is required. A dirty window may affect scanning accuracy. Do not allow any abrasive material to touch the window.

To clean the scanner:

1. Dampen a soft cloth with one of the approved cleaning agents listed above or use pre-moistened wipes.
2. Gently wipe all surfaces, including the front, back, sides, top and bottom. Never apply liquid directly to the scanner. Be careful not to let liquid pool around the scanner window, trigger, cable connector or any other area on the device.
3. Be sure to clean the trigger and in between the trigger and the housing (use a cotton-tipped applicator to reach tight or inaccessible areas).
4. Do not spray water or other cleaning liquids directly into the exit window.
5. Wipe the scanner exit window with a lens tissue or other material suitable for cleaning optical material such as eyeglasses.
6. Immediately dry the scanner window after cleaning with a soft non-abrasive cloth to prevent streaking.
7. Allow the unit to air dry before use.
8. Scanner connectors:
  - a. Dip the cotton portion of a cotton-tipped applicator in isopropyl alcohol.
  - b. Rub the cotton portion of the cotton-tipped applicator back-and-forth across the connector on the Zebra scanner at least 3 times. Do not leave any cotton residue on the connector.
  - c. Use the cotton-tipped applicator dipped in alcohol to remove any grease and dirt near the connector area.
  - d. Use a dry cotton tipped applicator and rub the cotton portion of the cotton-tipped applicator back-and-forth across the connectors at least 3 times. Do not leave any cotton residue on the connectors.

## Troubleshooting

**Table 4-1 Troubleshooting**

Problem	Possible Causes	Possible Solutions
The aiming pattern does not appear when pressing the trigger.	No power to the digital scanner.	If the configuration requires a power supply, re-connect the power supply.
	Incorrect host interface cable is used.	Connect the correct host interface cable.
	Interface/power cables are loose.	Re-connect cables.
	Digital scanner is disabled.	For IBM 468x and USB IBM Hand-held, IBM Table-Top, and OPOS modes, enable the digital scanner via the host interface. Otherwise, see the technical person in charge of scanning.
	If using RS-232 Nixdorf B mode, CTS is not asserted.	Assert CTS line.
	Aiming pattern is disabled.	Enable the aiming pattern. See <i>Hand-Held Decode Aiming Pattern on page 5-17</i> .
Digital scanner emits aiming pattern, but does not decode the bar code.	Digital scanner is not programmed for the correct bar code type.	Program the digital scanner to read that type of bar code. See <i>Chapter 12, Symbologies</i> .
	Bar code symbol is unreadable.	Scan test symbols of the same bar code type to determine if the bar code is defaced.
	The symbol is not completely inside aiming pattern.	Move the symbol completely within the aiming pattern.  Move the symbol completely within the field of view (AIM pattern does NOT define FOV)
	Distance between digital scanner and bar code is incorrect.	Move the scanner closer to or further from the bar code. See <i>Decode Ranges on page 3-8</i> .

**Table 4-1 Troubleshooting (Continued)**

<b>Problem</b>	<b>Possible Causes</b>	<b>Possible Solutions</b>
Digital scanner decodes bar code, but does not transmit the data to the host.	Digital scanner is not programmed for the correct host type.	Scan the appropriate host type programming bar code. See the chapter corresponding to the host type.
	Interface cable is loose.	Re-connect the cable.
	If the digital scanner emits 4 long low beeps, a transmission error occurred.  This occurs if a unit is not properly configured or connected to the wrong host type.	Set the scanner's communication parameters to match the host's setting.
	If the digital scanner emits 5 low beeps, a conversion or format error occurred.	Configure the digital scanner's conversion parameters properly.
	If the digital scanner emits low/high/low beeps, it detected an invalid ADF rule.	Program the correct ADF rules. Refer to the <i>Advanced Data Formatting Programmer Guide</i> .
Host displays scanned data incorrectly.	Digital scanner is not programmed to work with the host.	Scan the appropriate host type programming bar code.
		For RS-232, set the digital scanner's communication parameters to match the host's settings.
		For a Keyboard Wedge configuration, program the system for the correct keyboard type, and turn off the CAPS LOCK key.
		Program the proper editing options (e.g., UPC-E to UPC-A Conversion).
Digital scanner emits short low/short medium/short high beep sequence (power-up beep sequence) more than once.	The USB bus may put the digital scanner in a state where power to the scanner is cycled on and off more than once.	Normal during host reset.
Digital scanner emits 4 short high beeps during decode attempt.	Digital scanner has not completed USB initialization.	Wait several seconds and scan again.
Digital scanner emits Low/low/low/extralow beeps when not in use.	RS-232 receive error.	Normal during host reset. Otherwise, set the digital scanner's RS-232 parity to match the host setting.
Digital scanner emits low/high beeps during programming.	Input error, incorrect bar code or <b>Cancel</b> bar code was scanned.	Scan the correct numeric bar codes within range for the parameter programmed.

**Table 4-1 Troubleshooting (Continued)**

<b>Problem</b>	<b>Possible Causes</b>	<b>Possible Solutions</b>
Digital scanner emits low/high/low/high beeps during programming.	Out of host parameter storage space.	Scan <a href="#">Default Parameters on page 5-5</a> .
	Out of memory for ADF rules.	Reduce the number of ADF rules or the number of steps in the ADF rules.
	During programming, indicates out of ADF parameter storage space.	Erase all rules and re-program with shorter rules.
Digital scanner emits low/high/low beeps.	ADF transmit error.	Refer to the Advanced Data Formatting Guide for information.
	Invalid ADF rule is detected.	Refer to the Advanced Data Formatting Guide for information.
Digital scanner emits a power-up beep after changing USB host type.	The USB bus re-established power to the digital scanner.	Normal when changing USB host type.
Digital scanner emits one high beep when not in use.	In RS-232 mode, a <BEL> character was received and Beep on <BEL> option is enabled.	Normal when <b>Beep on &lt;BEL&gt;</b> is enabled and the digital scanner is in RS-232 mode.
Digital scanner emits frequent beeps.	No power to the scanner.	Check the system power. If the configuration requires a power supply, re-connect the power supply.
	Incorrect host interface cable is used.	Verify that the correct host interface cable is used. If not, connect the correct host interface cable.
	Interface/power cables are loose.	Check for loose cable connections and re-connect cables.
Digital scanner emits five long low beeps after a bar code is decoded.	Conversion or format error was detected. The scanner's conversion parameters are not properly configured.	Ensure the scanner's conversion parameters are properly configured.
	Conversion or format error was detected. An ADF rule was set up with characters that can't be sent for the host selected.	Change the ADF rule, or change to a host that can support the ADF rule.
	Conversion or format error was detected. A bar code was scanned with characters that can't be sent for that host.	Change the bar code, or change to a host that can support the bar code.



**NOTE** If after performing these checks the digital scanner still experiences problems, contact the distributor or call support.

## Report Software Version Bar Code

When contacting support, a support representative may ask you to scan the bar code below to determine the version of software installed in the digital scanner.



Report Software Version

## Technical Specifications

**Table 4-2 Technical Specifications**

Item	Description
<b>Physical Characteristics</b>	
Dimensions	6.5 in H x 2.6 in W x 3.9 in D 16.5 cm H x 6.6 cm W x 9.8 cm D
Weight	5.7 oz. / 161.6 g
Input Voltage Range	4.5 to 5.5 VDC Host Powered; 4.5 to 5.5 VDC External Power Supply
Operating Current at Nominal Voltage (5.0V)	250 mA (typical). <b>Note:</b> Auto-Aim and Illumination on Acquiring Image
Standby Current (idle) at Nominal Voltage (5.0V)	150 mA (typical). <b>Note:</b> Auto-Aim On
Color	Nova White, Twilight Black
Supported Host Interfaces	USB, RS232, Keyboard Wedge, TGCS (IBM) 46XX over RS-485
USB Certification	DS2208 is USB2.0 Full Speed Compliant, visit <a href="http://USB.org">USB.org</a> for more details.
Keyboard Support	Supports over 90 international keyboards
User Indicators	Direct Decode Indicator, Good Decode LEDs, Rear View LEDs, Beeper (adjustable tone & volume)
<b>Performance Characteristics</b>	
Motion Tolerance (Hand-Held)	Up to 5 in/13 cm per second for 13 mil UPC

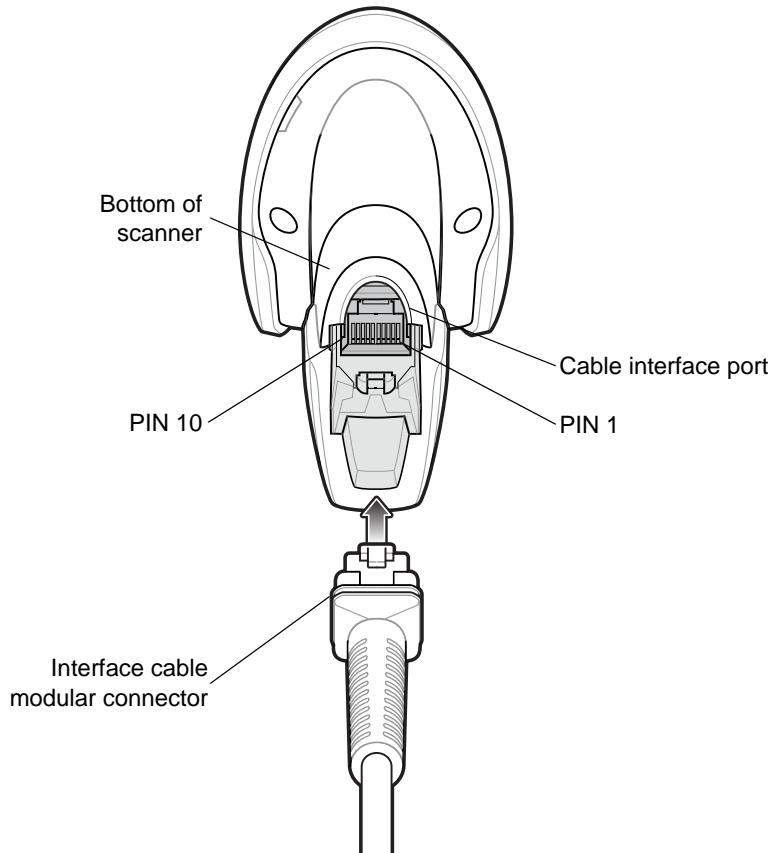
**Table 4-2 Technical Specifications (Continued)**

Item	Description
Swipe Speed (Hands-Free)	Up to 30.0 in/76.2 cm per second for 13 mil UPC
Light Source	Aiming Pattern: Linear 624nm Amber LED
Illumination	(2) 645nm Super-Red LEDs
Imager Field of View	32.8° H x 24.8° V Nominal
Image Sensor	640 x 480 pixels
Minimum Print Contrast	25% minimum reflective difference
Skew Tolerance	+/- 65°
Pitch Tolerance	+/- 65°
Roll Tolerance	0° - 360°
<b>User Environment</b>	
Operating Temperature	32.0° to 122.0° F / 0.0° to 50.0° C
Storage Temperature	-40.0° to 158.0° F / -40.0° to 70.0° C
Humidity	5% to 95% RH, non-condensing
Drop Specification	Designed to withstand multiple drops at 5.0 ft. /1.5 m to concrete
Tumble Specification	Designed to withstand 250 tumbles in 1.5 ft./.5 m tumbler <b>Note:</b> 1 tumble = 0.5 cycle.
Environmental Sealing	IP52
Electrostatic Discharge (ESD)	ESD per EN61000-4-2, +/-15 KV Air, +/-8 KV Direct, +/-8 KV Indirect
Ambient Light Immunity	0 to 10,000 Foot Candles / 0 to 107,600 Lux
<b>Accessories</b>	
Gooseneck Intellistand	Stand for Hands-Free use
<b>Symbol Decode Capability</b>	
1D	Code 39, Code 128, Code 93, Codabar/NW7, Code 11, MSI Plessey, UPC/EAN, I 2 of 5, Korean 3 of 5, GS1 DataBar, Base 32 (Italian Pharma)
2D	PDF417, MicroPDF417, Composite Codes, TLC-39, Data Matrix, GS1 DataMatrix, Maxicode, QR Code, GS1 QR Code, MicroQR, Aztec, Han Xin (Chinese Sensible)

**Table 4-2** Technical Specifications (Continued)

Item	Description
Postal Codes	US Postnet, US Planet, UK Postal, Japan Postal, Australia Post, Royal Mail 4 State Customer, KIX Code (Dutch), UPU 4 State Postal FICS (Post US4), USPS 4 State Postal (Post US3), Mailmark
<b>Minimum Element Resolution</b>	
Code 39	4.0 mil
Code 128	4.0 mil
Data Matrix	6.0 mil
QR Code	6.7 mil
<b>Utilities and Management</b>	
123Scan	Programs scanner parameters, upgrades firmware, provides scanned bar code data and prints reports (see <a href="#">Chapter 2, 123Scan and Software Tools</a> ).
Symbol Scanner SDK	Generates a fully-featured scanner application, including documentation, drivers, test utilities and sample source code ( <a href="http://www.zebra.com/ScannerSDKforWindows">www.zebra.com/ScannerSDKforWindows</a> ).
Scanner Management Service (SMS)	Remotely manages your Zebra scanner and queries its asset information ( <a href="http://www.zebra.com/sms">www.zebra.com/sms</a> ).

## Digital Scanner Signal Descriptions



**Figure 4-1** Digital Scanner Cable Pinouts

The signal descriptions in [Table 4-3](#) apply to the connectors on the DS2208 digital scanner and are for reference only.

**Table 4-3** DS2208 Digital Scanner Signal Pin-outs

Pin	USB	RS-232	Keyboard Wedge	IBM
1	Short to Pin 6	Reserved	1M Resistor to Pin 8	2M Resistor to Pin 8
2	Power	Power	Power	Power
3	Ground	Ground	Ground	Ground
4	Reserved	TXD	KBD_CLK	IBM_TXD
5	D +	RXD	TERM_DATA	IBM_RXD
6	Short to Pin 1	RTS	KBD_DATA	IBM_DIR
7	D -	CTS	TERM_CLK	Reserved
8	Reserved	Reserved	1M Resistor to Pin 1	2M Resistor to Pin 1
9	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
10	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
<b>SHELL</b>	Shield	Shield	Shield	Shield



# CHAPTER 5 USER PREFERENCES & MISCELLANEOUS OPTIONS

## Introduction

You can program the scanner to perform various functions, or activate different features. This chapter describes user preference features and provides programming bar codes for selecting these features.

The scanner ships with the settings shown in [Table 5-1 on page 5-2](#) (also see [Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters](#) for all defaults). If the default values suit requirements, programming is not necessary.

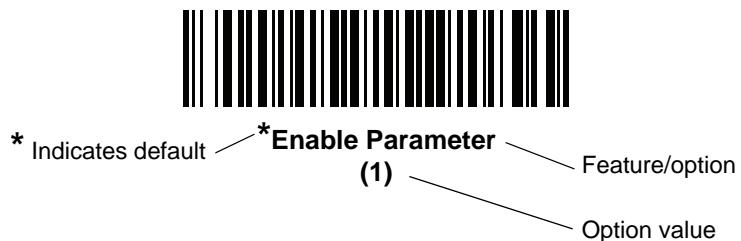
## Setting Parameters

To set feature values, scan a single bar code or a short bar code sequence. The settings are stored in non-volatile memory and are preserved even when the scanner powers down.

 **NOTE** Most computer monitors allow scanning bar codes directly on the screen. When scanning from the screen, be sure to set the document magnification to a level where you can see the bar code clearly, and bars and/or spaces do not merge.

If not using the default host, select the host type (see each host chapter for specific host information) after the power-up beeps sound. This is only necessary upon the first power-up when connected to a new host.

To return all features to default values, see [Default Parameters on page 5-5](#). Throughout the programming bar code menus, asterisks indicate (\*) default values.



## Scanning Sequence Examples

In most cases, scanning one bar code sets the parameter value. For example, to set the beeper tone to high, scan the **High Frequency** (beeper tone) bar code listed under [Beeper Tone on page 5-8](#). The scanner issues a fast warble beep and the LED turns green, signifying a successful parameter entry.

Other parameters, such as **Serial Response Time-Out** or **Data Transmission Formats**, require scanning several bar codes. See the parameter descriptions for this procedure.

## Errors While Scanning

Unless otherwise specified, to correct an error during a scanning sequence, just re-scan the correct parameter.

---

## User Preferences/Miscellaneous Options Parameter Defaults

[Table 5-1](#) lists defaults for user preferences parameters. Change these values in one of two ways:

- Scan the appropriate bar codes in this chapter. The new value replaces the standard default value in memory. To recall default parameter values, see [Default Parameters on page 5-5](#).
- Configure the scanner using the 123Scan<sup>2</sup> configuration program. See [Chapter 2, 123Scan and Software Tools](#).

✓ **NOTE** See [Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters](#) for all user preference, host, symbology, and miscellaneous default parameters.

**Table 5-1 User Preferences Parameter Defaults**

Parameter	Parameter Number <sup>1</sup>	SSI Number <sup>2</sup>	Default	Page Number
<b>User Preferences</b>				
Set Default Parameter			N/A	<a href="#">5-5</a>
Parameter Bar Code Scanning	236	ECh	Enable	<a href="#">5-6</a>
Beep After Good Decode	56	38h	Enable	<a href="#">5-6</a>
Beeper Volume	140	8Ch	High	<a href="#">5-7</a>
Beeper Tone	145	91h	Medium	<a href="#">5-8</a>
Beeper Duration	628	F1h 74h	Medium	<a href="#">5-9</a>
Suppress Power Up Beeps	721	F1h D1h	Do Not Suppress	<a href="#">5-9</a>
LED on Good Decode	744	F1h E8h	Enable	<a href="#">5-10</a>
Direct Decode Indicator	859	F2h 5Bh	Disable	<a href="#">5-11</a>
Low Power Mode	128	80h	Disable	<a href="#">5-12</a>
Time Delay to Low Power Mode	146	92h	1 Hour	<a href="#">5-13</a>

1. Parameter number decimal values are used for programming via RSM commands.  
2. SSI number hex values are used for programming via SSI commands.

**Table 5-1 User Preferences Parameter Defaults (Continued)**

Parameter	Parameter Number <sup>1</sup>	SSI Number <sup>2</sup>	Default	Page Number
Trigger Mode (or Hand-Held Trigger Mode)	138	8Ah	Auto Aim	<a href="#">5-15</a>
Hands-Free Mode	630	F1h 76h	Enable	<a href="#">5-16</a>
Hand-Held Decode Aiming Pattern	306	F0h 32h	Enable	<a href="#">5-17</a>
Hands-Free (Presentation) Decode Aiming Pattern	590	F1h 4Eh	Enable Hands-Free (Presentation) Decode Aiming Pattern on PDF	<a href="#">5-18</a>
Picklist Mode	402	F0h 92h	Disable Picklist Mode Always	<a href="#">5-19</a>
Continuous Bar Code Read	649	F1h 89h	Disable	<a href="#">5-20</a>
Unique Bar Code Reporting	723	F1h D3h	Enable	<a href="#">5-20</a>
Decode Session Timeout	136	88h	9.9 Seconds	<a href="#">5-21</a>
Hands-Free Decode Session Timeout	400	F0 90	15	<a href="#">5-21</a>
Timeout Between Decodes, Same Symbol	137	89h	0.5 Seconds	<a href="#">5-22</a>
Timeout Between Decodes, Different Symbols	144	90h	0.1 Seconds	<a href="#">5-22</a>
Decode Mirror Images (Data Matrix Only)	537	F1h 19h	Auto	<a href="#">5-23</a>
Mobile Phone/Display Mode	N/A	N/A	N/A	<a href="#">5-23</a>
PDF Prioritization	719	F1h CFh	Disable	<a href="#">5-24</a>
PDF Prioritization Timeout	720	F1h D0h	200 ms	<a href="#">5-24</a>
Decoding Illumination	298	F0h 2Ah	Enable	<a href="#">5-25</a>
Illumination Brightness	669	F1h 9Dh	High	<a href="#">5-25</a>
Low Light Scene Detection	810	F2h 2Ah	Dim Illumination Low Light Assist Scene Detection	<a href="#">5-26</a>
Motion Tolerance (Hand-Held Trigger Mode Only)	858	F2h 5Ah	Less	<a href="#">5-27</a>
Product ID (PID) Type	1281	F8h 05h 01h	Host Type Unique	<a href="#">5-27</a>
Product ID (PID) Value	1725	F8h 06h BDh	0	<a href="#">5-28</a>
ECLevel	1710	F8h 06h AEh	0	<a href="#">5-28</a>

1. Parameter number decimal values are used for programming via RSM commands.

2. SSI number hex values are used for programming via SSI commands.

**Table 5-1 User Preferences Parameter Defaults (Continued)**

Parameter	Parameter Number <sup>1</sup>	SSI Number <sup>2</sup>	Default	Page Number
<b>Miscellaneous Options</b>				
Enter Key	N/A	N/A	N/A	<a href="#">5-29</a>
Tab Key	N/A	N/A	N/A	<a href="#">5-29</a>
Transmit Code ID Character	45	2Dh	None	<a href="#">5-30</a>
Prefix Value	99, 105	63h, 69h	7013 <CR><LF>	<a href="#">5-31</a>
Suffix 1 Value	98, 104	62h, 68h	7013 <CR><LF>	<a href="#">5-31</a>
Suffix 2 Value	100, 106	64h, 6Ah		
Scan Data Transmission Format	235	EBh	Data As Is	<a href="#">5-32</a>
FN1 Substitution Values	103, 109	67h, 6Dh	7013 <CR><LF>	<a href="#">5-34</a>
Transmit "No Read" Message	94	5E	Disable	<a href="#">5-35</a>
Unsolicited Heartbeat Interval	1118	F8h 04h 5Eh	Disable	<a href="#">5-36</a>
<b>Send Versions</b>				
Software Version	N/A	N/A	N/A	<a href="#">5-37</a>
Serial Number	N/A	N/A	N/A	<a href="#">5-37</a>
Manufacturing Information	N/A	N/A	N/A	<a href="#">5-37</a>

1. Parameter number decimal values are used for programming via RSM commands.

2. SSI number hex values are used for programming via SSI commands.

## User Preferences

### Default Parameters

Scan one of the following bar codes to reset the scanner to its default settings as follows:

- **Restore Defaults** resets all default parameters as follows:
  - If you configured custom default parameter values via the **Write to Custom Defaults** bar code, scanning the **Restore Defaults** bar code restores these custom values.
  - If you did not configure custom default parameter values, scanning the **Restore Defaults** bar code restores the factory default values. See [Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters](#) for these values.
- **Set Factory Defaults** clears all custom default values and sets the factory default values. See [Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters](#) for these values.

### Write to Custom Defaults

To create a set of custom defaults, select the desired parameter values in this guide, and then scan **Write to Custom Defaults**.



Restore Defaults



Set Factory Defaults



Write to Custom Defaults

## Parameter Bar Code Scanning

### Parameter # 236

SSI # ECh

Scan one of the following bar codes to select whether to enable or disable the decoding of parameter bar codes, including the **Set Defaults** bar codes.



\*Enable Parameter Bar Code Scanning  
(1)



Disable Parameter Bar Code Scanning  
(0)

## Beep After Good Decode

### Parameter # 56

SSI # 38h

Scan one of the following bar codes to select whether or not the scanner beeps after a good decode. If you select **Disable Beep After Good Decode**, the beeper still operates during parameter menu scanning and to indicate error conditions.



\*Enable Beep After Good Decode  
(1)



Disable Beep After Good Decode  
(0)

## Beeper Volume

**Parameter # 140**

**SSI # 8Ch**

Scan one of the following bar codes to select a beeper volume.



**Low Volume  
(2)**



**Medium Volume  
(1)**



**\*High Volume  
(0)**

## Beeper Tone

**Parameter # 145**

**SSI # 91h**

Scan one of the following bar codes to select a beeper tone for the good decode beep.



**Disable Tone**  
(3)



**Low Tone**  
(2)



**\*Medium Tone**  
(1)



**High Tone**  
(0)



**Medium to High Tone (2-tone)**  
(4)

## Beeper Duration

**Parameter # 628**

**SSI # F1h 74h**

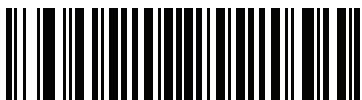
Scan one of the following bar codes to select the duration for the good decode beep.



**Short Duration  
(0)**



**\*Medium Duration  
(1)**



**Long Duration  
(2)**

## Suppress Power Up Beeps

**Parameter # 721**

**SSI # F1h D1h**

Scan one of the following bar codes to select whether or not to suppress the scanner's power-up beeps.



**\*Do Not Suppress Power Up Beeps  
(0)**



**Suppress Power Up Beeps  
(1)**

## LED on Good Decode

**Parameter # 744**

**SSI # F1h E8h**

Scan one of the following bar codes to select whether or not the LED blinks on a good decode.



**\*Enable LED on Good Decode  
(2)**



**Disable LED on Good Decode  
(0)**

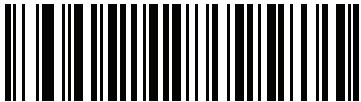
## Direct Decode Indicator

**Parameter # 859**

**SSI # F2h 5Bh**

This parameter is only supported in Auto Aim and Standard (Level) *Trigger Mode*. Scan one of the following bar codes to select optional blinking of the illumination on a successful decode. You must continue to hold the trigger upon decode to see the illumination blink. If you release the trigger upon decode, the blinking does not occur. If you release the trigger upon decode, the blinking does not occur. This allows you to choose additional feedback for a successful decode by holding the trigger, or to continue to scan as normal.

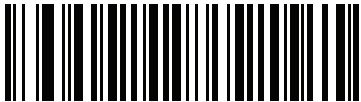
- **\*Disable Direct Decode Indicator** - Illumination does not blink on a successful decode.
- **1 Blink** - Illumination blinks once upon a successful decode.
- **2 Blinks** - Illumination blinks twice upon a successful decode.



**\*Disable Direct Decode Indicator  
(0)**



**1 Blink  
(1)**



**2 Blinks  
(2)**

## Low Power Mode

**Parameter # 128**

**SSI # 80h**

✓ **NOTE** The Low Power Mode parameter only applies for non-USB and non-RS485 host interfaces, and when *Trigger Mode* on page 5-15 is set to **Level (Standard)**.

Scan one of the following bar codes to select whether or not the scanner enters low power mode after a decode attempt or host communication. This applies to serial and keyboard wedge connections. If disabled, power remains on after each decode attempt.

If you enable this, see *Time Delay to Low Power Mode* to set the inactivity time period.



**Enable Low Power Mode  
(1)**



**\*Disable Low Power Mode  
(0)**

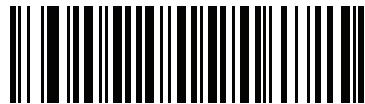
**Time Delay to Low Power Mode****Parameter # 146****SSI # 92h**

✓ **NOTE** This parameter only applies when *Low Power Mode* is enabled.

Scan one of the following bar codes to set the time the scanner remains active before entering low power mode. The scanner wakes upon trigger press or when the host attempts to communicate with the scanner.



**1 Second**  
(17)



**10 Seconds**  
(26)



**1 Minute**  
(33)



**5 Minutes**  
(37)



**15 Minutes**  
(43)

**Time Delay to Low Power Mode (continued)**



**30 Minutes**  
**(45)**



**45 Minutes**  
**(46)**



**\*1 Hour**  
**(49)**



**3 Hours**  
**(51)**



**6 Hours**  
**(54)**



**9 Hours**  
**(57)**

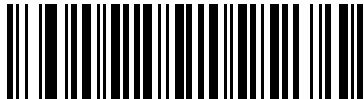
## Trigger Mode

### Parameter # 138

### SSI # 8Ah

Scan one of the following bar codes to select a trigger mode for the scanner:

- **Standard (Level)** - A trigger press activates decode processing. Decode processing continues until the bar code decodes, you release the trigger, or the *Decode Session Timeout* on page 5-21 occurs.
- **Presentation (Blink)** - The scanner activates decode processing when it detects a bar code in its field of view. After a period of non-use, the scanner illumination and aimer settings change according to the default *Low Light Scene Detection* setting. The scanner re-activates decode processing when the scanner senses motion.
- **\*Auto Aim** - The scanner projects the aiming pattern when lifted. A trigger press activates decode processing. After two seconds of inactivity the aiming pattern shuts off.



Standard (Level)  
(0)



Presentation (Blink)  
(7)



\*Auto Aim  
(9)

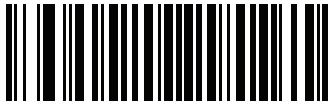
## Hands-Free Mode

**Parameter # 630**

**SSI # F1h 76h**

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable hands-free mode:

- **Enable Hands-Free Mode** - When you place the scanner in a stand, it automatically triggers when presented with a bar code. Lifting the scanner or pulling the trigger causes it to behave according to the setting of the [Trigger Mode on page 5-15](#).
- **Disable Hands-Free Mode** - The scanner behaves according to the setting of the [Trigger Mode on page 5-15](#) regardless of whether it is hand-held or in stand.



\*Enable Hands-Free Mode  
(1)



Disable Hands-Free Mode  
(0)

## Hand-Held Decode Aiming Pattern

### Parameter # 306

SSI # F0h 32h

Scan one of the following bar codes to select when to project the aiming pattern in hand-held mode:

- **Enable Hand-Held Decode Aiming Pattern** - This projects the aiming pattern during bar code capture.
- **Disable Hand-Held Decode Aiming Pattern** - This turns the aiming pattern off.
- **Enable Hand-Held Decode Aiming Pattern on PDF** - This projects the aiming pattern when the scanner detects a PDF bar code.

✓ **NOTE** With [Picklist Mode on page 5-19](#) enabled, the decode aiming pattern flashes even if you disable the **Hand-Held Decode Aiming Pattern**.



\*Enable Hand-Held Decode Aiming Pattern  
(2)



Disable Hand-Held Decode Aiming Pattern  
(0)



Enable Hand-Held Decode Aiming Pattern on PDF  
(3)

## Hands-Free (Presentation) Decode Aiming Pattern

**Parameter # 590**

**SSI # F1h 4Eh**

Scan one of the following bar codes to select when to project the aiming pattern in hands-free mode:

- **Enable Hands-Free (Presentation) Decode Aiming Pattern** - This projects the aiming pattern during bar code capture.
- **Disable Hands-Free (Presentation) Decode Aiming Pattern** - This turns the aiming pattern off.
- **Enable Hands-Free (Presentation) Decode Aiming Pattern on PDF** - This projects the aiming pattern when the scanner detects a PDF bar code.

✓ **NOTE** With [Picklist Mode on page 5-19](#) enabled, the decode aiming pattern flashes even when you disable the Hands-Free Decode Aiming Pattern.



**Enable Hands-Free (Presentation)  
Decode Aiming Pattern  
(1)**



**Disable Hands-Free (Presentation)  
Decode Aiming Pattern  
(0)**



**\*Enable Hands-Free (Presentation)  
Decode Aiming Pattern on PDF  
(2)**

## Picklist Mode

### Parameter # 402

SSI # F0h 92h

Scan one of the following bar codes to select a Picklist Mode. In this mode, you can pick out and decode a bar code from a group of bar codes that are printed close together by placing the aiming pattern on the bar code you want to decode.



**NOTE** Enabling Picklist Mode overrides the Disable Decode Aiming Pattern options. You can not disable the decode aiming pattern when Picklist Mode is enabled.

Enabling Picklist Mode can slow decode speed and hinder the ability to decode longer bar codes.

- **Enable Picklist Mode Always** - Picklist Mode is always enabled.
- **Enable Picklist Mode in Hand-Held Mode** - Picklist Mode is enabled when the scanner is out of hands-free mode and disabled when the scanner is in presentation mode.
- **Enable Picklist Mode in Hands-Free Mode** - Picklist Mode is enabled when the scanner is in hands-free mode only.
- **Disable Picklist Mode Always** - Picklist Mode is always disabled.



Enable Picklist Mode Always  
(2)



Enable Picklist Mode in Hand-Held Mode  
(1)



Enable Picklist Mode in Hands-Free Mode  
(3)



\*Disable Picklist Mode Always  
(0)

## Continuous Bar Code Read

**Parameter # 649**

**SSI # F1h 89h**

Scan **Enable Continuous Bar Code Read** to report every bar code while the trigger is pressed.

✓ **NOTE** We strongly recommend enabling [Picklist Mode on page 5-19](#) with this parameter. Disabling Picklist Mode can cause accidental decodes when more than one bar code is in the scanner's field of view.



**Enable Continuous Bar Code Read**  
(1)



**\*Disable Continuous Bar Code Read**  
(0)

## Unique Bar Code Reporting

**Parameter # 723**

**SSI # F1h D3h**

Scan **Enable Continuous Bar Code Read Uniqueness** to report only unique bar codes while the trigger is pressed. This option only applies when [Continuous Bar Code Read](#) is enabled.



**\*Enable Unique Bar Code Reporting**  
(1)



**Disable Unique Bar Code Reporting**  
(0)

## Decode Session Timeout

### Parameter # 136

#### SSI # 88h

This parameter sets the maximum time decode processing continues during a scan attempt. It is programmable in 0.1 second increments from 0.5 to 9.9 seconds. The default timeout is 9.9 seconds.

To set a Decode Session Timeout, scan the following bar code, and then scan two bar codes from [Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes](#) that correspond to the desired on time. Enter a leading zero for single digit numbers. For example, to set a Decode Session Timeout of 0.5 seconds, scan this bar code, and then scan the **0** and **5** bar codes. To correct an error or change the selection, scan [Cancel on page G-3](#).



Decode Session Timeout

## Hands-Free Decode Session Timeout

### Parameter # 400

#### SSI # F0 90

This parameter is the hands-free compliment to the **Decode Session Timeout**. It configures the minimum and maximum decode processing time during a hands-free scan attempt. It only applies to the hands-free trigger mode or when a scanner is place in the gooseneck stand. The default is 15; range = 2 - 255.

The minimum decode processing time is defined as the time in which the scanner stops decoding when an object is removed or left stationary in the imaging field of view.

The maximum decode processing time is defined as the time in which the scanner stops decoding when an object is left in or is moving in the field of view.

Both the maximum and minimum times are configured using a single setting. The relationship of this setting is as follows:

Setting Value <sup>1</sup>	Minimum Time	Maximum Time
X < 25	250 ms	2.5 Seconds
X >= 25	X * 10 ms	X * 100 ms

<sup>1</sup>Setting value must be three digits.

For example, a setting value of 100 results in the scanner turning off approximately 1 second after an object is removed from the field of view or 10 seconds while an object is in the field of view moving.

The default value of the setting is 15 which results in a minimum time of 250 ms and maximum time of 2.5 seconds.

Adjust this setting based on your requirements. For example, when doing PDF prioritization, this parameter should be set to a value where the maximum time is above the PDF prioritization timeout.

To set a three digit value scan the following bar code, and then scan three bar codes from [Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes](#). Enter a leading zero for single digit numbers. To correct an error or change a selection, scan [Cancel on page G-3](#).



**Hands-Free Decode Session Timeout**

## Timeout Between Decodes, Same Symbol

**Parameter # 137**

**SSI # 89h**

Use this option in presentation mode or [Continuous Bar Code Read](#) mode to prevent the scanner from continuously decoding the same bar code when it is left in the scanner's field of view. The bar code must be out of the field of view for the timeout period before the scanner reads the same consecutive symbol. It is programmable in 0.1 second increments from 0.0 to 9.9 seconds. The default interval is 0.5 seconds.

To select the timeout between decodes for the same symbol, scan the following bar code, and then scan two bar codes from [Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes](#) that correspond to the desired interval, in 0.1 second increments.



**Timeout Between Decodes, Same Symbol**

## Timeout Between Decodes, Different Symbols

**Parameter # 144**

**SSI # 90h**

Use this option in presentation mode or [Continuous Bar Code Read](#) to control the time the scanner waits before decoding a different symbol. It is programmable in 0.1 second increments from 0.1 to 9.9 seconds. The default is 0.1 seconds.

To select the timeout between decodes for different symbols, scan the following bar code, and then scan two bar codes from [Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes](#) that correspond to the desired interval, in 0.1 second increments..



**NOTE** Timeout Between Decodes, Different Symbols cannot be greater than or equal to the [Decode Session Timeout](#).



**Timeout Between Decodes, Different Symbols**

## Decode Mirror Images (Data Matrix Only)

### Parameter # 537

SSI # F1h 19h

Select an option for decoding mirror image Data Matrix bar codes:

- Always - decode only Data Matrix bar codes that are mirror images
- Never - do not decode Data Matrix bar codes that are mirror images
- Auto - decode both mirrored and unmirrored Data Matrix bar codes.



Never  
(0)



Always  
(1)



\*Auto  
(2)

## Mobile Phone/Display Mode



**NOTE** Reading bar codes on mobile phones does not require a special mode of operation.

## PDF Prioritization

### Parameter # 719

SSI # F1h CFh

Scan **Enable PDF Prioritization** to delay decoding certain 1D bar codes (see *Note* below) by the value specified in **PDF Prioritization Timeout**. During that time the scanner attempts to decode a PDF417 symbol (e.g., on a US driver's license), and if successful, reports this only. If it does not decode (can not find) a PDF417 symbol, it reports the 1D symbol after the timeout. The 1D symbol must be in the device's field of view for the scanner to report it. This parameter does not affect decoding other symbologies.



#### **NOTE**

The 1D Code 128 bar code lengths include the following:

- 7 to 10 characters
- 14 to 22 characters
- 27 to 28 characters

In addition, a Code 39 bar code with the following lengths are considered to potentially be part of a US driver's license:

- 8 characters
- 12 characters



**Enable PDF Prioritization**  
(1)



**\*Disable PDF Prioritization**  
(0)

## PDF Prioritization Timeout

### Parameter # 720

SSI # F1h D0h

If you enabled **PDF Prioritization**, set this timeout to indicate how long the scanner attempts to decode a PDF417 symbol before reporting the 1D bar code in the field of view.

Scan the following bar code, and then scan four bar codes from [Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes](#) that specify the timeout in milliseconds. For example, to enter 400 ms, scan the following bar code, and then scan 0400. The range is 0 to 5000 ms, and the default is 200 ms.



**PDF Prioritization Timeout**

## Decoding Illumination

### Parameter # 298

SSI # F0h 2Ah

Scan one of the following bar codes to determine whether the scanner turns on illumination to aid decoding. Enabling illumination usually results in superior images and better decode performance. The effectiveness of the illumination decreases as the distance to the target increases.



**\*Enable Decoding Illumination**  
(1)



**Disable Decoding Illumination**  
(0)

## Illumination Brightness

### Parameter # 669

SSI # F1h 9Dh

Scan one of the following bar codes to set the illumination brightness used during an active decode session. This only applies in hand-held mode (not in presentation mode).



**NOTE** Selecting a lower brightness level can affect decode performance.



**Low Illumination Brightness**  
(2)



**Medium Illumination Brightness**  
(4)



**\*High Illumination Brightness**  
(8)

## Low Light Scene Detection

### Parameter # 810

SSI # F2h 2Ah

Scan one of the following bar codes to allow the scanner to detect motion in dim to dark illumination environments when in presentation mode:

- **No Low Light Scene Detection** - The scanner attempts to detect motion as best it can with the aim pattern and illumination turned off when the scanner is idle.
- **Aiming Pattern Low Light Assist Scene Detection** - Illumination is off, but the aim pattern is on when the scanner is idle to assist in scene detection.
- **Dim Illumination Low Light Assist Scene Detection** - The aim pattern is off, but illumination is on at a dim level to assist in scene detection.



No Low Light Assist Scene Detection  
(0)



Aiming Pattern Low Light Assist Scene Detection  
(1)



\*Dim Illumination Low Light Assist Scene Detection  
(2)

## Motion Tolerance (Hand-Held Trigger Modes Only)

**Parameter # 858**

**SSI # F2h 5Ah**

Scan one of the following bar codes to select a motion tolerance option:

- **Less Motion Tolerance** - This provides optimal decoding performance on 1D bar codes.
- **More Motion Tolerance** - This increases motion tolerance and speeds decoding when scanning a series of 1D bar codes in rapid progression.



**\*Less Motion Tolerance  
(0)**



**More Motion Tolerance  
(1)**

## Product ID (PID) Type

**Parameter # 1281**

**SSI # F8h 05h 01h**

Scan one of the following bar codes to define the PID value reported in USB enumeration.



**\*Host Type Unique  
(0)**



**Product Unique  
(1)**



**IBM Unique  
(2)**

## Product ID (PID) Value

**Parameter # 1725**

**SSI # F8h 06h BDh**

To set a Product ID value, scan **Set PID Value**, and then scan four numeric barcodes in [Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes](#) that correspond to the value. Enter a leading zero for single digit numbers. To correct an error, or change a selection, scan [Cancel on page G-3](#). The range is (0,1600-1649).

✓ **NOTE** This parameter is applicable to customers using a Firmware Flash Update per the Toshiba Global Commerce Solutions (TGCS) Universal Serial Bus OEM Point-of-Sale Device Interface.



**Set PID Value**

## ECLevel

**Parameter # 1710**

**SSI # F8h 06h AEh**

To set an ECLevel value, scan **Set ECLevel**, and then scan five numeric barcodes in [Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes](#) that correspond to the desired level. Enter a leading zero for single digit numbers. To correct an error, or change a selection, scan [Cancel on page G-3](#).

✓ **NOTE** This parameter is applicable to customers using a Firmware Flash Update per the Toshiba Global Commerce Solutions (TGCS) Universal Serial Bus OEM Point-of-Sale Device Interface. It allows a customer to define an ECLevel value in order to manage and control Flash Update operations on the 4690 operating system.

Contact the Zebra Customer Support Center online at: [www.zebra.com/support](http://www.zebra.com/support) for more information.



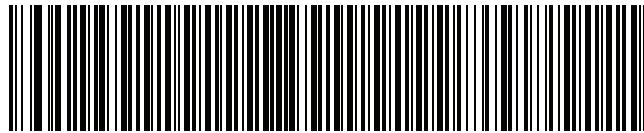
**Set ECLevel**

---

## Miscellaneous Scanner Parameters

### Enter Key

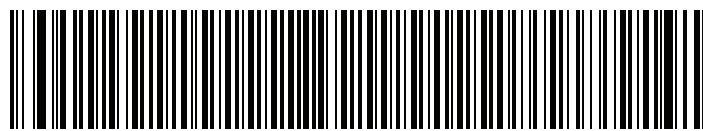
Scan the following bar code to add an Enter key (carriage return/line feed) after scanned data.  
To program other prefixes and/or suffixes, see [Prefix/Suffix Values on page 5-31](#).



Add Enter Key (Carriage Return/Line Feed)

### Tab Key

Scan the following bar code to add a Tab key after scanned data.



Tab Key

## Transmit Code ID Character

### Parameter # 45

SSI # 2Dh

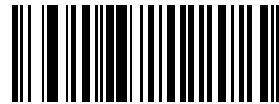
A Code ID character identifies the code type of a scanned bar code. This is useful when decoding more than one code type. In addition to any single character prefix selected, the Code ID character is inserted between the prefix and the decoded symbol.

Select no Code ID character, a Symbol Code ID character, or an AIM Code ID character. For Code ID characters, see [Symbol Code Identifiers on page E-1](#) and [AIM Code Identifiers on page E-3](#).

✓ **NOTE** If you enable Symbol Code ID Character or AIM Code ID Character, and enable [Transmit "No Read" Message on page 5-35](#), the scanner appends the code ID for Code 39 to the NR message.



Symbol Code ID Character  
(2)



AIM Code ID Character  
(1)



\*None  
(0)

## Prefix/Suffix Values

**Key Category Parameter # P = 99, S1 = 98, S2 = 100**

**SSI # P = 63h, S1 = 62h, S2 = 64h**

**Decimal Value Parameter # P = 105, S1 = 104, S2 = 106**

**SSI # P = 69h, S1 = 68h, S2 = 6Ah**

You can append a prefix and/or one or two suffixes to scan data for use in data editing. To set a value for a prefix or suffix, scan one of the following bar codes, and then scan four bar codes from [Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes](#) that correspond to that value. See [Appendix I, ASCII Character Sets](#) for the four-digit codes.

When using host commands to set the prefix or suffix, set the key category parameter to 1, and then set the 3-digit decimal value. See [Appendix I, ASCII Character Sets](#) for the four-digit codes.

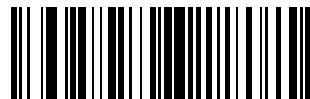
The default prefix and suffix value is 7013 <CR><LF> (Enter key). To correct an error or change a selection, scan [Cancel on page G-3](#).



**NOTE** To use Prefix/Suffix values, first set the [Scan Data Transmission Format on page 5-32](#).



**Scan Prefix  
(7)**



**Scan Suffix 1  
(6)**



**Scan Suffix 2  
(8)**



**Data Format Cancel**

## Scan Data Transmission Format

### Parameter # 235

SSI # EBh

To change the scan data format, scan one of the following bar codes corresponding to the desired format.



**NOTE** If using this parameter do not use ADF rules to set the prefix/suffix.

To set values for the prefix and/or suffix, see [Prefix/Suffix Values on page 5-31](#).



\*Data As Is  
(0)



<DATA> <SUFFIX 1>  
(1)



<DATA> <SUFFIX 2>  
(2)



<DATA> <SUFFIX 1> <SUFFIX 2>  
(3)

## Scan Data Transmission Format (continued)



<PREFIX> <DATA>  
(4)



<PREFIX> <DATA> <SUFFIX 1>  
(5)



<PREFIX> <DATA> <SUFFIX 2>  
(6)



<PREFIX> <DATA> <SUFFIX 1> <SUFFIX 2>  
(7)

## FN1 Substitution Values

**Key Category Parameter # 103**

**Key Category SSI # 67h**

**Decimal Value Parameter # 109**

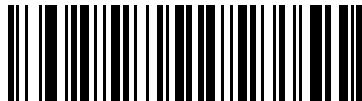
**Decimal Value SSI # 6Dh**

Keyboard wedge and USB HID keyboard hosts support a FN1 substitution feature. Enabling this substitutes any FN1 character (0x1b) in an EAN128 bar code with a value. This value defaults to 7013 <CR><LF> (Enter key).

When using host commands to set the FN1 substitution value, set the key category parameter to 1, and then set the 3-digit keystroke value. See the ASCII Character Set table for the current host interface for the desired value.

To select a FN1 substitution value via bar code menus:

1. Scan the following bar code.



**Set FN1 Substitution Value**

2. Locate the keystroke desired for FN1 Substitution in the ASCII Character Set table for the current host interface, and enter the 4-digit ASCII value by scanning four bar codes from [Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes](#).

To correct an error or change the selection, scan **Cancel**.

To enable FN1 substitution for USB HID keyboard, scan the **Enable FN1 Substitution** bar code on page [5-34](#).

## Transmit “No Read” Message

### Parameter # 94

#### SSI # 5Eh

Scan one of the following bar codes to set an option for transmitting the No Read (NR) characters:

- ✓ **NOTE** If you enable **Transmit No Read**, and also enable Symbol Code ID Character or AIM Code ID Character for [Transmit Code ID Character on page 5-30](#), the scanner appends the code ID for Code 39 to the NR message.
- ✓ **NOTE** This does not apply in presentation mode.
  - **Enable No Read** - This transmits the characters NR when a successful decode does not occur before trigger release or the **Decode Session Timeout** expires. See [Decode Session Timeout on page 5-21](#).
  - **Disable No Read** - This sends nothing to the host if a symbol does not decode.



**Enable No Read**  
(1)



**\*Disable No Read**  
(0)

## Unsolicited Heartbeat Interval

**Parameter # 1118**

**SSI # F8h 04h 5Eh**

The scanner can send unsolicited heartbeat messages to assist in diagnostics. To enable this parameter and set the desired unsolicited heartbeat interval, scan one of the following time interval bar codes, or scan **Set Another Interval** followed by four bar codes from [Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes](#) that correspond to the desired number of seconds. The range is 0 - 9999.

Scan **Disable Unsolicited Heartbeat Interval** to turn off the feature.

The heartbeat event is sent as decode data (with no decode beep) in the form of:

MOTEVTHB:nnn

where **nnn** is a three-digit sequence number starting at 001 and wrapping after 100.



**10 Seconds  
(10)**



**1 Minute  
(60)**



**Set Another Interval**



**\*Disable Unsolicited Heartbeat Interval  
(0)**

---

## Send Versions

### Software Version

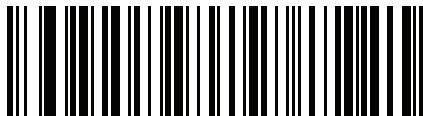
Scan the following bar code to send the version of software installed in the scanner.



Software Version

### Serial Number

Scan the following bar code to send the scanner serial number to the host.



Serial Number

### Manufacturing Information

Scan the following bar code to send the scanner manufacturing information to the host.



Manufacturing Information



# CHAPTER 6 SIGNATURE CAPTURE PREFERENCES

## Introduction

You can program the digital scanner to perform various functions, or activate different features. This chapter describes signature capture preference features and provides programming bar codes for selecting these features.

The digital scanner ships with the settings shown in [Table 6-1 on page 6-2](#) (also see [Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters](#) for all defaults). If the default values suit requirements, programming is not necessary.

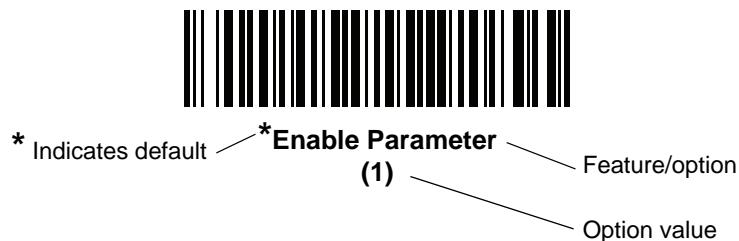
- ✓ **NOTE** Although the DS2208 digital scanner supports signature capture, the quality of the image is not guaranteed. If the image does not meet your needs it is recommended that you upgrade to a DS4308 or DS8108 scanner.

## Setting Parameters

To set feature values, scan a single bar code or a short bar code sequence. The settings are stored in non-volatile memory and are preserved even when the imager powers down.

- ✓ **NOTE** Most computer monitors allow scanning bar codes directly on the screen. When scanning from the screen, be sure to set the document magnification to a level where you can see the bar code clearly, and bars and/or spaces do not merge.

To return all features to default values, scan the [Set Factory Defaults on page 5-5](#). Throughout the programming bar code menus, asterisks (\*) indicate default values.



## Scanning Sequence Examples

In most cases scanning one bar code sets the parameter value. For example, to enable signature capture, scan the **Enable Signature Capture** bar code under [Signature Capture on page 6-3](#). The digital scanner issues a fast warble beep and the LED turns green, signifying a successful parameter entry.

Other parameters require scanning several bar codes. See the parameter descriptions for this procedure.

## Errors While Scanning

Unless otherwise specified, to correct an error during a scanning sequence, just re-scan the correct parameter.

---

## Signature Capture Preferences Parameter Defaults

*Table 6-1* lists defaults for image capture preference parameters. Change these values in one of two ways:

- Scan the appropriate bar codes in this chapter. The new value replaces the standard default value in memory. To recall default parameter values, see [Default Parameters on page 5-5](#).
- Configure the scanner using the 123Scan<sup>2</sup> configuration program. See [Chapter 2, 123Scan and Software Tools](#).

✓ **NOTE** See [Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters](#) for all user preference, host, symbology, and miscellaneous default parameters.

See [Appendix K, Signature Capture Code](#) for signature capture code information.

**Table 6-1 Signature Capture Preferences Parameter Defaults**

Parameter	Parameter Number <sup>1</sup>	SSI Number <sup>2</sup>	Default	Page Number
<b>Signature Capture Preferences</b>				
Signature Capture	93	5Dh	Disable	<a href="#">6-3</a>
Signature Capture Image File Format Selection	313	F0h 39h	JPEG	<a href="#">6-4</a>
Signature Capture Bits per Pixel (BPP)	314	F0h 3Ah	8 BPP	<a href="#">6-5</a>
Signature Capture Width	366	F4h F0h 6Eh	400	<a href="#">6-6</a>
Signature Capture Height	367	F4h F0h 6Fh	100	<a href="#">6-6</a>
Signature Capture JPEG Quality	421	F0h A5h	65	<a href="#">6-6</a>

1. Parameter number decimal values are used for programming via RSM commands.  
2. SSI number hex values are used for programming via SSI commands.

## Signature Capture Preferences

The parameters in this chapter control signature capture characteristics.

### Signature Capture

**Parameter # 93**

**SSI # 5Dh**

A signature capture bar code is a special-purpose symbology which delineates a signature capture area in a document with a machine-readable format. The recognition pattern is variable so it can optionally provide an index to various signatures. The region inside the bar code pattern is considered the signature capture area. See [Appendix K, Signature Capture Code](#) for more information.

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable Signature Capture.



**Enable Signature Capture  
(1)**



**\*Disable Signature Capture  
(0)**

## Signature Capture File Format Selector

**Parameter # 313**

**SSI # F0h 39h**

Scan one of the following bar codes to select a signature file format appropriate for the system (BMP, TIFF, or JPEG). The imager stores captured signatures in the selected format.

### Output File Format

Decoding a signature capture bar code de-skews the signature image and converts the image to a BMP, JPEG, or TIFF file format. The output data includes the file descriptor followed by the formatted signature image.

**Table 6-2 Output File Format**

File Descriptor			Signature Image
Output Format (1 byte)	Signature Type (1 byte)	Signature Image Size (4 bytes) (BIG Endian)	
JPEG - 1	1 - 8	0x00000400	0x00010203....
BMP - 3			
TIFF - 4			



**BMP Signature Format  
(3)**



**\*JPEG Signature Format  
(1)**



**TIFF Signature Format  
(4)**

## Signature Capture Bits Per Pixel

Parameter # 314

SSI # F0h 3Ah

Scan one of the following bar codes to select the number of significant bits per pixel (BPP) to use when capturing a signature:

- **1 BPP** - For a black and white image.
- **4 BPP** - Assigns 1 of 16 levels of grey to each pixel.
- **8 BPP** - Assigns 1 of 256 levels of grey to each pixel.

✓ **NOTE** The imager ignores these settings for JPEG file formats, which only support **8 BPP**.



**1 BPP**  
(0)



**4 BPP**  
(1)



**\*8 BPP**  
(2)

## Signature Capture Width

**Parameter # 366**

**SSI # F4h F0h 6Eh**

The aspect ratio of the Signature Capture Width and Signature Capture Height parameters must match that of the signature capture area. For example, a 4 x 1 inch signature capture area requires a 4 to 1 aspect ratio of width to height.

To set the width of the signature capture box, scan the **Signature Capture Width** bar code, and then scan four bar codes from [Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes](#) corresponding to a value in the range of 001 to 640 decimal.



**Signature Capture Width (Default: 400)**  
**(001 - 640 Decimal)**

## Signature Capture Height

**Parameter # 367**

**SSI # F4h F0h 6Fh**

To set the height of the signature capture box, scan the **Signature Capture Height** bar code, and then scan three bar codes from [Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes](#) corresponding to a value in the range of 001 to 480 decimal.



**Signature Capture Height (Default: 100)**  
**(001 - 480 Decimal)**

## Signature Capture JPEG Quality

**Parameter # 421**

**SSI # F0h A5h**

Scan the **JPEG Quality Value** bar code, and then scan three bar codes from [Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes](#) corresponding to a value from 005 to 100, where 100 represents the highest quality image.



**JPEG Quality Value (Default: 065)**  
**(5 - 100 Decimal)**

# CHAPTER 7 USB INTERFACE

## Introduction

This chapter describes how to set up the scanner with a USB host. The scanner connects directly to a USB host, or a powered USB hub, which powers it. No additional power supply is required.

The scanner ships with the settings shown in [Table 7-1 on page 7-3](#) (also see [Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters](#) for all defaults). If the default values suit requirements, programming is not necessary.

## Setting Parameters

To set feature values, scan a single bar code or a short bar code sequence. The settings are stored in non-volatile memory and are preserved even when the scanner powers down.

- ✓ **NOTE** Most computer monitors allow scanning bar codes directly on the screen. When scanning from the screen, be sure to set the document magnification to a level where you can see the bar code clearly, and bars and/or spaces do not merge.

To return all features to default values, scan [Set Factory Defaults on page 5-5](#). Throughout the programming bar code menus, asterisks (\*) indicate default values.



## Scanning Sequence Examples

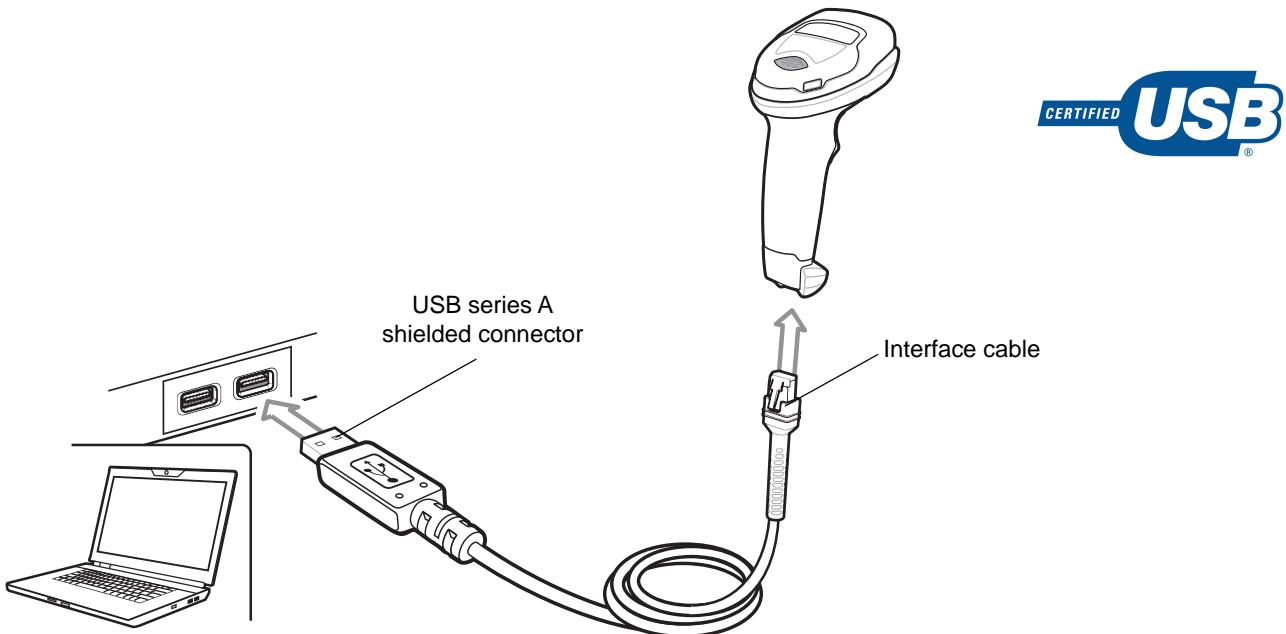
In most cases scanning one bar code sets the parameter value. For example, to set the USB keystroke delay to medium, scan the **Medium Delay (20 msec)** bar code under [USB Keystroke Delay on page 7-7](#). The scanner issues a fast warble beep and the LED turns green, signifying a successful parameter entry.

Other parameters require scanning several bar codes. See the parameter descriptions for this procedure.

## Errors While Scanning

Unless otherwise specified, to correct an error during a scanning sequence, just re-scan the correct parameter.

## Connecting a USB Interface



**Figure 7-1** *USB Connection.*

✓ **NOTE** If you already have existing non shielded cables from legacy products (such as the LS2208) they can be reused. However, be aware that the shielded cables provide improved ESD performance. For regional information about cables and cable compatibility, go to the Zebra Partner Portal at: [partnerportal.zebra.com/PartnerPortal/product\\_services/downloads\\_z/barcode\\_scanners/Universal-Cable-Guide-Bar-Code-Scanners.xlsx](http://partnerportal.zebra.com/PartnerPortal/product_services/downloads_z/barcode_scanners/Universal-Cable-Guide-Bar-Code-Scanners.xlsx).

The scanner connects to USB-capable hosts including:

- TGCS (IBM) terminals
- Apple™ desktop and notebooks
- Other network computers that support more than one keyboard.

The following operating systems support the scanner through USB:

- Windows® XP, 7, 8, 10
- MacOS 8.5 - MacOS 10.6
- IBM 4690 OS.

The scanner also interfaces with other USB hosts that support USB Human Interface Devices (HID).

To set up the digital scanner:



**NOTE** Interface cables vary depending on configuration. The connectors illustrated in [Figure 7-1](#) are examples only. The connectors may be different than those illustrated, but the steps to connect the digital scanner are the same.

1. Connect the modular connector of the USB interface cable to the cable interface port on the digital scanner (see [Installing the Interface Cable on page 1-3](#)).
2. Plug the series A connector in the USB host or hub, or plug the Plus Power connector in an available port of the IBM SurePOS terminal.
3. The digital scanner automatically detects the host interface type and uses the default setting. If the default (\*) does not meet your requirements, select another USB device type by scanning the appropriate bar code from [USB Device Type on page 7-5](#).
4. On first installation when using Windows, the software prompts to select or install the Human Interface Device driver. To install this driver, provided by Windows, click **Next** through all the choices and click **Finished** on the last choice. The digital scanner powers up during this installation.
5. To modify any other parameter options, scan the appropriate bar codes in this chapter.

If problems occur with the system, see [Troubleshooting on page 4-3](#).

## USB Parameter Defaults

[Table 7-1](#) lists the defaults for USB host parameters. Change these values in one of two ways:

- Scan the appropriate bar codes in this chapter. The new value replaces the standard default value in memory. To recall default parameter values, see [Default Parameters on page 5-5](#).
- Configure the scanner using the 123Scan<sup>2</sup> configuration program. See [Chapter 2, 123Scan and Software Tools](#).



**NOTE** See [Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters](#) for all user preferences, symbologies, and miscellaneous default parameters.

**Table 7-1 USB Interface Parameter Defaults**

Parameter	Default	Page Number
<b>USB Host Parameters</b>		
USB Device Type	USB Keyboard HID	<a href="#">7-5</a>
Symbol Native API (SNAPI) Status Handshaking	Enable	<a href="#">7-7</a>
USB Keystroke Delay	No Delay	<a href="#">7-7</a>
USB CAPS Lock Override	Disable	<a href="#">7-8</a>
Bar Codes With Unknown Characters	Enable	<a href="#">7-8</a>
USB Convert Unknown to Code 39	Disable	<a href="#">7-9</a>
USB Fast HID	Enable	<a href="#">7-9</a>
USB Polling Interval	3 msec	<a href="#">7-10</a>

**Table 7-1** *USB Interface Parameter Defaults (Continued)*

Parameter	Default	Page Number
Keypad Emulation	Enable	<a href="#">7-12</a>
Quick Keypad Emulation	Enable	<a href="#">7-12</a>
Keypad Emulation with Leading Zero	Enable	<a href="#">7-13</a>
USB Keyboard FN1 Substitution	Disable	<a href="#">7-13</a>
Function Key Mapping	Disable	<a href="#">7-14</a>
Simulated Caps Lock	Disable	<a href="#">7-14</a>
Convert Case	None	<a href="#">7-15</a>
CDC Beep on <BEL>	Enable	<a href="#">7-16</a>
USB Static CDC	Enable	<a href="#">7-15</a>
USB CDC Host Variant	CDC Standard	<a href="#">7-16</a>
TGCS (IBM) USB Direct I/O Beep	Honor	<a href="#">7-19</a>
TGCS (IBM) USB Beep Directive	Ignore	<a href="#">7-19</a>
TGCS (IBM) USB Bar Code Configuration Directive	Ignore	<a href="#">7-20</a>
TGCS (IBM) USB Specification Version	Version 2.2	<a href="#">7-21</a>

## USB Host Parameters

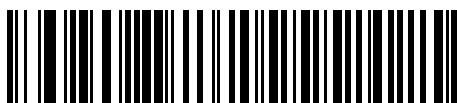
### USB Device Type

Scan one of the following bar codes to select the USB device type. To select a country keyboard type for the **USB Keyboard HID** host, see [Appendix B, Country Codes](#).

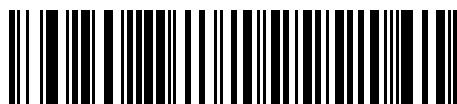


#### NOTES

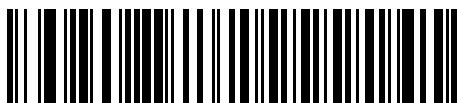
1. When changing USB Device Types, the scanner resets and issues the standard startup beep sequences.
2. When connecting two scanners to a host, IBM does not allow selecting two of the same device type. If you require two connections, select IBM Table-Top USB for one scanner and IBM Hand-Held USB for the second scanner.
3. Select **IBM Hand-Held USB** to disable data transmission when an IBM register issues a Scan Disable command. Aim, illumination, and decoding is still permitted. Select **OPOS (IBM Hand-Held with Full Disable)** to completely shut off the scanner when an IBM register issues a Scan Disable command, including aim, illumination, decoding, and data transmission.



\*USB Keyboard HID



IBM Table-Top USB



IBM Hand-Held USB



OPOS  
(IBM Hand-Held with Full Disable)

## USB Device Type (continued)

✓ **NOTES**

1. Before scanning **USB CDC Host**, install the appropriate USB CDC Driver on the host to ensure the scanner does not stall during power up (due to a failure to enumerate USB). Go to [www.zebra.com/support](http://www.zebra.com/support), Support & Downloads > Barcode Scanners > USB CDC Driver, select the appropriate Windows platform, and download either Zebra\_CDC\_ACM\_Driver\_(x64)v2.15.0004.exe (64 bit) or Zebra\_CDC\_ACM\_Driver(x86)\_v2.15.0004.exe (32 bit).

To recover a stalled scanner:

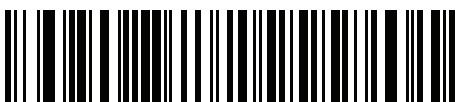
Install the USB CDC Driver

or

Unplug the USB cable and then reconnect it to add power back to the scanner. Scan HID Keyboard or another host.

After power-up, hold the trigger for 10 seconds, which allows the digital scanner to power up using an alternate USB configuration. Upon power-up, scan another **USB Device Type**.

2. To select the Toshiba TEC device type, refer to the *Toshiba TEC Programmer's Guide*.
3. Select **USB HID POS** to communicate over a USB cable with Universal Windows Platform (UWP) applications running on Windows 10 devices.



**USB CDC Host**



**SSI over USB CDC**



**Symbol Native API (SNAPI) with Imaging Interface**



**Symbol Native API (SNAPI) without Imaging Interface**



**USB HID POS**  
(for Windows 10 devices only)

## Symbol Native API (SNAPI) Status Handshaking

After selecting a SNAPI interface as the USB device type, scan one of the following bar codes to select whether to enable or disable status handshaking.



\*Enable SNAPI Status Handshaking



Disable SNAPI Status Handshaking

## USB Keystroke Delay

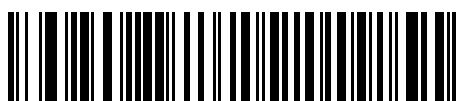
Scan one of the following bar codes to set the delay, in milliseconds, between emulated keystrokes. Select a longer delay for hosts that require slower data transmission.



\*No Delay



Medium Delay (20 msec)



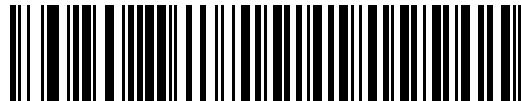
Long Delay (40 msec)

## USB CAPS Lock Override

This option applies only to the USB Keyboard HID device. Scan **Override Caps Lock Key** to preserve the case of the data regardless of the state of the **Caps Lock** key. This setting is always enabled for the Japanese Windows (ASCII) keyboard type and can not be disabled.



**Override Caps Lock Key  
(Enable)**



**\*Do Not Override Caps Lock Key  
(Disable)**

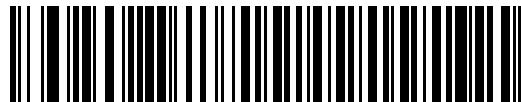
## Bar Codes with Unknown Characters

This option applies only to the USB Keyboard HID and IBM devices. Unknown characters are characters the host does not recognize. Scan **Send Bar Codes With Unknown Characters** to send all bar code data except for unknown characters. The scanner issues no error beeps.

Scan **Do Not Send Bar Codes With Unknown Characters** for IBM devices to prevent sending bar codes containing at least one unknown character to the host, or for USB Keyboard HID devices to send the bar code characters up to the unknown character. The scanner issues an error beep.



**\*Send Bar Codes with Unknown Characters**



**Do Not Send Bar Codes with Unknown Characters**

## USB Convert Unknown to Code 39

This option applies only to the IBM Hand-Held, IBM Table-Top, and OPOS devices. Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable converting unknown bar code type data to Code 39.



Enable Convert Unknown to Code 39



\*Disable Convert Unknown to Code 39

## USB Fast HID

Scan **Enable USB Fast HID** to transmit USB HID data at a faster rate.

✓ **NOTE** Disable this if there are problems with transmission.



\*Enable USB Fast HID



Disable USB Fast HID

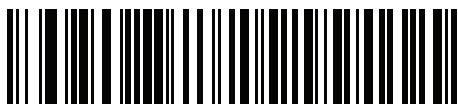
## USB Polling Interval

Scan one of the following bar codes to set the polling interval, which is the rate at which data transmits between the scanner and host computer. A lower number indicates a faster data rate.

✓ **NOTE** When changing the USB polling interval, the scanner restarts and issues a power-up beep sequence.



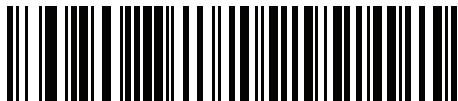
**IMPORTANT** Ensure the host supports the selected data rate.



**1 msec**



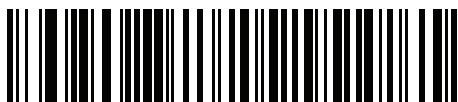
**2 msec**



**\*3 msec**

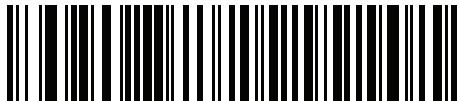


**4 msec**



**5 msec**

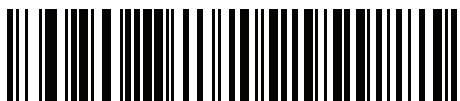
## USB Polling Interval (continued)



6 msec



7 msec



8 msec



9 msec

## Keypad Emulation

Scan **Enable Keypad Emulation** to send all characters as ASCII sequences over the numeric keypad. For example, ASCII A transmits as “ALT make” 0 6 5 “ALT Break”.

- ✓ **NOTE** If your keyboard type is not listed in the country code list (see *Country Codes on page B-1*), disable *Quick Keypad Emulation on page 7-12* and enable **Keypad Emulation**.



\*Enable Keypad Emulation



Disable Keypad Emulation

## Quick Keypad Emulation

This option applies only to the USB Keyboard HID device when **Keypad Emulation** is enabled. Scan **Enable Quick Keypad Emulation** for a quicker method of emulation using the numeric keypad where ASCII sequences are only sent for ASCII characters not found on the keyboard.



\*Enable Quick Keypad Emulation



Disable Quick Keypad Emulation

## Keypad Emulation with Leading Zero

Scan **Enable Keypad Emulation with Leading Zero** to send character sequences sent over the numeric keypad as ISO characters which have a leading zero. For example, ASCII A transmits as “ALT MAKE” 0 0 6 5 “ALT BREAK”.



\*Enable Keypad Emulation with Leading Zero



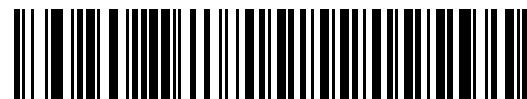
Disable Keypad Emulation with Leading Zero

## USB Keyboard FN1 Substitution

This option applies only to the USB Keyboard HID device. Scan **Enable USB Keyboard FN1 Substitution** to replace any FN1 character in a GS1 128 bar code with a user-selected Key Category and value. See [FN1 Substitution Values on page 5-34](#) to set the Key Category and Key Value.



Enable USB Keyboard FN1 Substitution



\*Disable USB Keyboard FN1 Substitution

## Function Key Mapping

ASCII values under 32 are normally sent as a control-key sequence (see [Table I-1 on page I-1](#)). Scan **Enable Function Key Mapping** to send the keys in bold in place of the standard key mapping. Table entries that do not have a bold equivalent remain the same regardless of whether you enable this parameter.



Enable Function Key Mapping



\*Disable Function Key Mapping

## Simulated Caps Lock

Scan **Enable Simulated Caps Lock** to invert upper and lower case characters on the bar code as if the Caps Lock state is enabled on the keyboard. This inversion occurs regardless of the keyboard's **Caps Lock** state.



**NOTE** Simulated Caps Lock applies to ASCII characters only.



**NOTE** Do not enable this if [USB CAPS Lock Override on page 7-8](#) is enabled.



Enable Simulated Caps Lock



\*Disable Simulated Caps Lock

## Convert Case

Scan one of the following bar codes to convert all bar code data to the selected case.



**NOTE** Convert Case applies to ASCII characters only.



\*No Case Conversion



Convert All to Upper Case



Convert All to Lower Case

## USB Static CDC

When disabled, each device connected consumes another COM port (first device = COM1, second device = COM2, third device = COM3, etc.)

When enabled, each device connects to the same COM port.



\*Enable USB Static CDC



Disable USB Static CDC

## CDC Beep on <BEL>

If you enable this parameter, the scanner issues a beep when it detects a <BEL> character in USB CDC communications. <BEL> indicates an illegal entry or other important event.



\*Enable CDC Beep on <BEL>



Disable CDC Beep on <BEL>

## USB CDC Host Variant

### Parameter # 1713

The USB Airline/Airport (CUTE/CUSS/CUPS) CDC host variant feature mimics the RS-232 host variant (CUTE) feature and is supported over USB CDC host mode. The scanner transmits data in Airline/Airport (CUTE/CUSS/CUPS) data format <Prefix><Data><Suffix>.

The USB Airline/Airport (CUTE/CUSS/CUPS) feature supports two CDC host variants; one for each Independent Software Vendor (ISV) specification (namely, SITA and ARINC). The default USB CDC host variant is Standard CDC Host Mode.



\*CDC Standard



CDC SITA



CDC ARINC

## Lockout of Parameter Bar Code Scanning

If the scanner is configured as USB CDC Host Variant (other than CDC Standard), it disables all parameter bar code scanning. The user can unlock it by scanning **Enable Parameter Bar Code Scanning** on [page 5-6](#).

## Parameter Default

Enabling of any of the USB CDC Host Variants (other than CDC Standard) requires coercion of other parameters. The scanner updates the parameters in [Table 7-2](#) to the specified default values based on the USB CDC Host Variant selected.

**Table 7-2** Parameter Default for Airport Device Types

Parameter	SITA Defaults	ARINC Defaults
IATA 2 of 5 (D 2 of 5)	Enabled	Enabled
Parameter Scanning	Disabled	Disabled
IATA 2 of 5 (D 2 of 5) lengths	6 to 55	6 to 55
I 2 of 5	Enabled	Enabled
I 2 of 5 lengths	4 to 56	4 to 56
Micro PDF	Enabled	N/R
PDF417	N/R	Enabled
Code39	N/R	Enabled
Code128	N/R	Enabled
Triggered Same Symbol Timeout	Enabled	Enabled
Transmit Code ID	Disabled	Disabled

## Transmit Data Formatting

### SITA Format

Data is transmitted in the following format: <STX><ID><DATA><CR><ETX>

Where:

<STX> - 0x02

<ID> - Custom Code ID ([Table 7-3](#))

<DATA> - Bar code decode data

<CR> - 0x0d

<ETX> - 0x03

**Table 7-3** SITA Code ID

Code Type	Code ID Character
I 2 of 5	1
D 2 of 5, IATA	2
Code 39, all variants	3
Data Matrix	4

**Table 7-3 SITA Code ID (Continued)**

Code Type	Code ID Character
Code 128, all variants	5
PDF, all variants	6
QR Code, all variants	7
Aztec Code, all variants	8
UPCA, EAN13, all supplemental variants	A
All others	None

**ARINC Format**

Data is transmitted in the following format: <STX><DID><DOC><BID><DATA><ETX><CRC>

Where:

- <STX> - 0x02
- <DID> - 0xB1 (DTYP and DNUM)
- <DOC> - 0x30 (Document Identifier)
- <BID> - Bar code Identifier ([Table 7-4](#))
- <DATA> - Bar code decode data
- <ETX> - 0x03
- <CRC> - CRC-16

**Table 7-4 ARINC Bar Code Identifier**

Bar Code Type	ASCII Value
Interleaved 2 of 5	1
Industrial 2 of 5 (D 2 of 5)	2
Code 39	3
Code 128	5
Code 39 with check digit*	8
Industrial 2 of 5 with check digit*	9
Interleaved 2 of 5 with check digit*	0
2D Data Matrix	4
2D QR	7
2D PDF	6
EAN 13 with check digit*	A

\* Note: Bar code types with check digits are currently not supported on the scanner for ARINC.

**Table 7-4 ARINC Bar Code Identifier (Continued)**

Bar Code Type	ASCII Value
2D Aztec	8
All others	None

\* Note: Bar code types with check digits are currently not supported on the scanner for ARINC.

## TGCS (IBM) USB Direct I/O Beep

The host can send a direct I/O beep request to the scanner. If you select **Ignore Direct I/O Beep**, the scanner does not sound beeps on this command. All directives are still acknowledged to the USB host as if they were processed.



\*Honor Direct IO Beep



Ignore Direct IO Beep

## TGCS (IBM) USB Beep Directive

The host can send a beeper configuration request to the scanner. Scan **Ignore Beep Directive** to prevent the scanner from processing the host request. All directives are still acknowledged to the USB host as if they were processed.



Honor Beep Directive



\*Ignore Beep Directive

## TGCS (IBM) USB Bar Code Configuration Directive

The host can enable and disable code types. Scan **Ignore Bar Code Configuration Directive** to prevent the scanner from processing the host request. All directives are still acknowledged to the USB host as if they were processed.



Honor Bar Code Configuration Directive



\*Ignore Bar Code Configuration Directive

## TGCS (IBM) USB Specification Version

Select **IBM Specification Level Version 0 (Original)** to send the following code types as Unknown:

- Data Matrix
- GS1 Data Matrix
- QR Code
- GS1 QR
- MicroQR Code
- Aztec

Select **IBM Specification Level Version 2.2** to send the code types with the appropriate IBM identifiers.



IBM Specification Level Version 0 (Original)



\*IBM Specification Level Version 2.2

---

## ASCII Character Sets for USB

See [Appendix I, ASCII Character Sets](#) for the following:

- ASCII Character Set ([Table I-1 on page I-1](#))
- ALT Key Character Set ([Table I-2 on page I-6](#))
- GUI Key Character Set ([Table I-3 on page I-7](#))
- F Key Character Set ([Table I-5 on page I-10](#)).



# CHAPTER 8 SSI INTERFACE

---

## Introduction

This chapter describes the system requirements of the Simple Serial Interface (SSI), which provides a communications link between Zebra decoders (e.g., scan engines, slot scanners, hand-held scanners, two-dimensional scanners, hands-free scanners, and RF base stations) and a serial host. It provides the means for the host to control the decoder or scanner.

---

## Communication

All communication between the scanner and host occurs over the hardware interface lines using the SSI protocol. Refer to the *Simple Serial Interface Programmer's Guide*, p/n 72E-40451-xx, for more information on SSI.

The host and the scanner exchange messages in packets. A packet is a collection of bytes framed by the proper SSI protocol formatting bytes. The maximum number of bytes per packet that the SSI protocol allows for any transaction is 257 (255 bytes + 2 byte checksum).

Depending on the configuration, the scanner can send decode data as ASCII data (unpacketized), or as part of a larger message (packetized).

SSI performs the following functions for the host device:

- Maintains a bi-directional interface with the scanner
- Allows the host to send commands that control the scanner
- Passes data from the scanner to a host device in SSI packet format or straight decode message.

The SSI environment consists of a scanner, a serial cable which attaches to the host device, and if required, a power supply.

SSI transmits all decode data including special formatting (e.g., AIM ID). Parameter settings can control the format of the transmitted data.

The scanner can also send parameter information, product identification information, or event codes to the host.

All commands sent between the scanner and host must use the format described in the SSI Message Formats section. [SSI Transactions on page 8-3](#) describes the required sequence of messages in specific cases.

**Table 8-1** lists all the SSI opcodes the scanner supports. The host transmits opcodes designated type H. The scanner (decoder) transmits type D opcodes, and either can transmit Host/Decoder (H/D) types.

**Table 8-1 SSI Commands**

Name	Type	Opcode	Description
AIM_OFF	H	0xC4	Deactivate aim pattern.
AIM_ON	H	0xC5	Activate aim pattern.
BEEP	H	0xE6	Sound the beeper.
CAPABILITIES_REPLY	D	0xD4	Reply to CAPABILITIES_REQUEST; contains a list of the capabilities and commands the decoder supports.
CAPABILITIES_REQUEST	H	0xD3	Request capabilities report from the decoder.
CMD_ACK	H/D	0xD0	Positive acknowledgment of received packet.
CMD_NAK	H/D	0xD1	Negative acknowledgment of received packet.
DECODE_DATA	D	0xF3	Decode data in SSI packet format.
EVENT	D	0xF6	Event indicated by associated event code.
LED_OFF	H	0xE8	De-activate LED output.
LED_ON	H	0xE7	Activate LED output.
PARAM_DEFAULTS	H	0xC8	Set parameter default values.
PARAM_REQUEST	H	0xC7	Request values of certain parameters.
PARAM_SEND	H/D	0xC6	Send parameter values.
REPLY_REVISION	D	0xA4	Reply to REQUEST_REVISION, contains the decoder's software/hardware configuration.
REQUEST_REVISION	H	0xA3	Request the decoder's configuration.
SCAN_DISABLE	H	0xEA	Prevent the operator from scanning bar codes.
SCAN_ENABLE	H	0xE9	Permit bar code scanning.
SLEEP	H	0xEB	Request to place the decoder into low power.
START_DECODE	H	0xE4	Tell the decoder to attempt to decode a bar code.
STOP_DECODE	H	0xE5	Tell the decoder to abort a decode attempt.
WAKEUP	H	N/A	Wake the decoder from low power mode.

For details of the SSI protocol, refer to the *Simple Serial Interface Programmer's Guide*.

---

## SSI Transactions

### General Data Transactions

#### ACK/NAK Handshaking

If you enable ACK/NAK handshaking (the default), all packeted messages must have a CMD\_ACK or CMD\_NAK response, unless the command description states otherwise. Zebra recommends leaving this handshaking enabled to provide feedback to the host. Raw decode data and WAKEUP do not use ACK/NAK handshaking since they are not packeted data.

Following is an example of a problem which can occur if you disable ACK/NAK handshaking:

- The host sends a PARAM\_SEND message to the scanner to change the baud rate from 9600 to 19200.
- The scanner cannot interpret the message.
- The scanner does not implement the change the host requested.
- The host assumes that the parameter change occurred and acts accordingly.
- Communication is lost because the change did not occur on both sides.

If you enable ACK/NAK handshaking, the following occurs:

- The host sends a PARAM\_SEND message.
- The scanner cannot interpret the message.
- The scanner CMD\_NAKs the message.
- The host resends the message.
- The scanner receives the message successfully, responds with CMD\_ACK, and implements parameter changes.

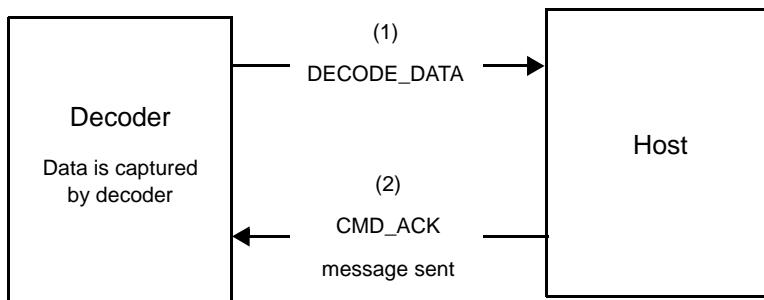
## Decoded Data Transmission

The *Decode Data Packet Format* parameter controls how decode data is sent to the host. Set this parameter to send the data in a DECODE\_DATA packet. Clear this parameter to transmit the data as raw ASCII data.

- ✓ **NOTE** When transmitting decode data as raw ASCII data, ACK/NAK handshaking does not apply regardless of the state of the ACK/NAK handshaking parameter.

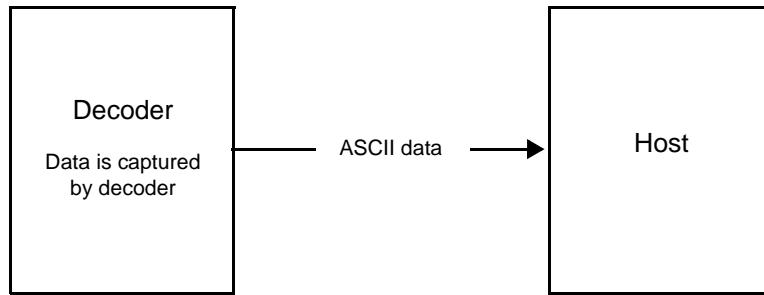
## ACK/NAK Enabled and Packeted Data

The scanner sends a DECODE\_DATA message after a successful decode. The scanner waits for a programmable timeout for a CMD\_ACK response. If it does not receive the response, the scanner tries to send two more times before issuing a host transmission error. If the scanner receives a CMD\_NAK from the host, it may attempt a retry depending on the cause field of the CMD\_NAK message.



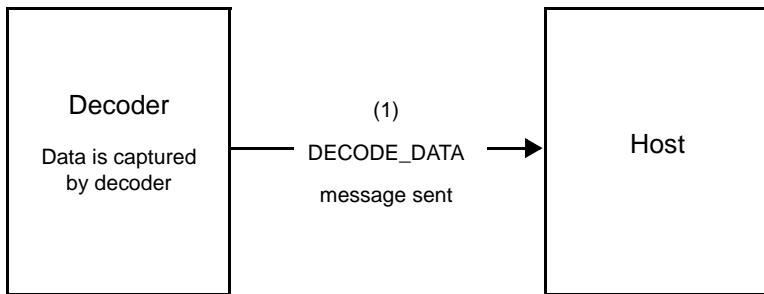
## ACK/NAK Enabled and Unpacketed ASCII Data

Even if ACK/NAK handshaking is enabled, no handshaking occurs because handshaking applies only to packeted data. In this example the `packetized_decode` parameter is disabled.



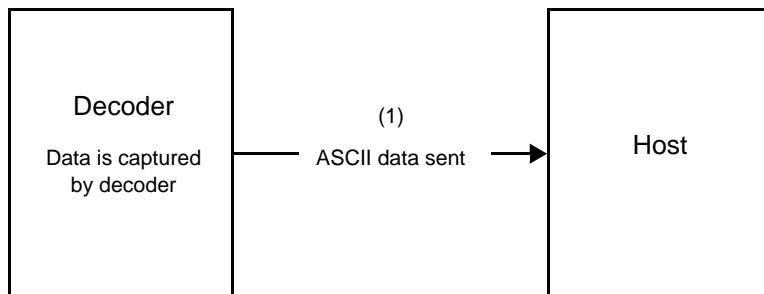
### ACK/NAK Disabled and Packeted DECODE\_DATA

In this example ACK/NAK does not occur even though packeted\_decode is enabled because the ACK/NAK handshaking parameter is disabled.



### ACK/NAK Disabled and Unpacketized ASCII Data

The decoder sends captured data to the host.



## Communication Summary

### RTS/CTS Lines

All communication must use RTS/CTS handshaking as described in the *Simple Serial Interface Programmer's Guide*, p/n 72E-40451-xx. If bypassing hardware handshaking, the host must send the WAKEUP command before all other communication or the first byte of a message can be lost during the scanner wakeup sequence. Zebra recommends not bypassing RTS/CTS hardware handshaking.

### ACK/NAK Option

ACK/NAK handshaking is enabled by default and Zebra recommends leaving it enabled. Disabling this can cause communication problems, as handshaking is the only acknowledgment that a message was received correctly. ACK/NAK is not used with unpacketed decode data regardless of whether it is enabled.

### Number of Data Bits

All communication with the scanner must use 8-bit data.

### Serial Response Timeout

The [Host Serial Response Timeout](#) parameter determines how long to wait for a handshaking response before trying again or aborting further attempts. Set the same value for both the host and scanner.



**NOTE** You can temporarily change the [Host Serial Response Timeout](#) when the host takes longer to process an ACK or longer data string. Zebra does not recommend frequent permanent changes due to limited write cycles of non-volatile memory.

### Retries

The host resends data twice after the initial send if the scanner does not respond with an ACK or NAK (if ACK/NAK handshaking is enabled), or response data (e.g., PARAM\_SEND, REPLY\_REVISION). If the scanner replies with a NAK RESEND, the host resends the data. All resent messages must have the resend bit set in the Status byte.

The scanner resends data two times after the initial send if the host fails to reply with an ACK or NAK (if ACK/NAK handshaking is enabled).

### Baud Rate, Stop Bits, Parity, Response Timeout, ACK/NAK Handshaking

If you use PARAM\_SEND to change these serial parameters, the ACK response to the PARAM\_SEND uses the previous values for these parameters. The new values then take effect for the next transaction.

### Errors

The scanner issues a communication error when:

- The CTS line is asserted when the scanner tries to transmit, and is still asserted on each of two successive retries
- The scanner does not receive an ACK or NAK after initial transmit and two resends.

## SSI Communication Notes

- When not using hardware handshaking, space messages sufficiently apart. The host must not communicate with the scanner if the scanner is transmitting.
- When using hardware handshaking, frame each message properly with handshaking signals. Do not try to send two commands within the same handshaking frame.
- There is a permanent/temporary bit in the PARAM\_SEND message. Removing power from the scanner discards temporary changes. Permanent changes are written to non-volatile memory. Frequent changes shorten the life of the non-volatile memory.

## Using Time Delay to Low Power Mode with SSI

*Time Delay to Low Power Mode on page 5-13* provides options to select a general time delay. To program a more specific delay value, use an SSI command according to *Table 8-2*.

**Table 8-2** Values for Selecting Time Delay to Low Power

Value	Timeout	Value	Timeout	Value	Timeout	Value	Timeout
0x00	15 Min	0x10	1 Sec	0x20	1 Min	0x30	1 Hour
0x01	30 Min	0x11	1 Sec	0x21	1 Min	0x31	1 Hour
0x02	60 Min	0x12	2 Sec	0x22	2 Min	0x32	2 Hours
0x03	90 Min	0x13	3 Sec	0x23	3 Min	0x33	3 Hours
N/A	N/A	0x14	4 Sec	0x24	4 Min	0x34	4 Hours
N/A	N/A	0x15	5 Sec	0x25	5 Min	0x35	5 Hours
N/A	N/A	0x16	6 Sec	0x26	6 Min	0x36	6 Hours
N/A	N/A	0x17	7 Sec	0x27	7 Min	0x37	7 Hours
N/A	N/A	0x18	8 Sec	0x28	8 Min	0x38	8 Hours
N/A	N/A	0x19	9 Sec	0x29	9 Min	0x39	9 Hours
N/A	N/A	0x1A	10 Sec	0x2A	10 Min	0x3A	10 Hours
N/A	N/A	0x1B	15 Sec	0x2B	15 Min	0x3B	15 Hours
N/A	N/A	0x1C	20 Sec	0x2C	20 Min	0x3C	20 Hours
N/A	N/A	0x1D	30 Sec	0x2D	30 Min	0x3D	30 Hours
N/A	N/A	0x1E	45 Sec	0x2E	45 Min	0x3E	45 Hours
N/A	N/A	0x1F	60 Sec	0x2F	60 Min	0x3F	60 Hours



**CAUTION** With hardware handshaking disabled, the scanner wakes from low power mode upon receiving a character. However, the scanner does not process this character or any others it receives during the 7 ms period following wakeup. Wait at least 7 ms after wakeup to send valid characters.

## Encapsulation of RSM Commands/Responses over SSI

The SSI protocol allows the host to send a command that is variable in length up to 255 bytes. Although there is a provision in the protocol to multi-packet commands from the host, the scanner does not support this. The host must fragment packets using the provisions in the RSM protocol.

## Command Structure

The expected positive response is SSI\_MGMT\_COMMAND which can be a multi-packet response. Devices that do not support this command respond with the standard SSI\_NAK.

## Response Structure

## Example Transaction

The following example illustrates how to retrieve diagnostic information (Diagnostic Testing and Reporting (Attribute #10061) decimal) from the scanner using encapsulation of RSM commands over SSI. Before sending an RSM command, the host must send the RSM Get Packet Size command to query the packet size supported by the device.

### Command from Host to Query Packet Size Supported by Device

```
0A 80 04 00 00 06 20 00 FF FF FD 4E
```

Where:

- 0A 80 04 00 is encapsulation of RSM commands over SSI command header
- 00 06 20 00 FF FF is RSM Get Packet Size command
- FD 4E is SSI command checksum

### Response from Device with Packet Size Information

```
0C 80 00 00 00 08 20 00 00 F0 00 F0 FD 6C
```

Where:

- 0C 80 00 00 is encapsulation of RSM command over SSI command header
- 00 08 20 00 00 F0 00 F0 is RSM Get Packet Size response
- FD 6C is SSI response checksum

### Command from Host to Retrieve Diagnostic Information

```
0C 80 04 00 00 08 02 00 27 4D 42 00 FE B0
```

Where:

- 0C 80 04 00 is encapsulation of RSM commands over SSI command header
- 00 08 02 00 27 4D 42 00 is attribute Get command requesting attribute 10061 decimal
- FE B0 is SSI command checksum

### Response from Device with Diagnostic Information

```
21 80 00 00 00 1D 02 00 27 4D 41 01 42 00 0E 00 00 00 01 03 02 03 03 03 04 03 05 03 06 03 FF FF FC 15
```

Where:

- 21 80 00 00 00 1D 02 00 27 4D 41 01 42 00 0E 00 00 is encapsulation of RSM responses over SSI command header
- 00 00 01 03 02 03 03 03 04 03 05 03 06 03 is attribute Get response which includes diagnostic report value
- FF FF is attribute Get response, packet termination
- FC 15 is SSI response checksum

## Setting Parameters

This section describes how to set up the scanner with an SSI host. When using SSI, program the scanner via bar code menu or SSI hosts commands.

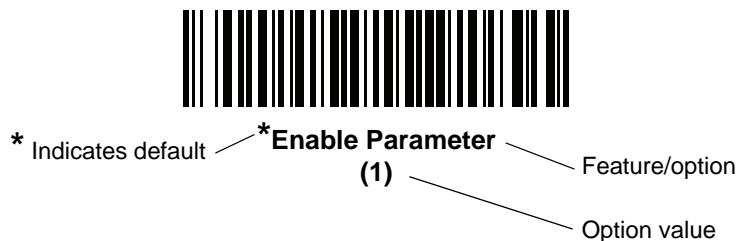
The scanner ships with the settings shown in [Table 8-3 on page 8-11](#) (also see [Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters](#) for all defaults). If the default values suit requirements, programming is not necessary.

To set feature values, scan a single bar code or a short bar code sequence. The settings are stored in non-volatile memory and are preserved even when the scanner powers down.



**NOTE** Most computer monitors allow scanning bar codes directly on the screen. When scanning from the screen, be sure to set the document magnification to a level where you can see the bar code clearly, and bars and/or spaces do not merge.

To return all features to default values, scan [Set Factory Defaults on page 5-5](#). Throughout the programming bar code menus, asterisks (\*) indicate default values.



## Scanning Sequence Examples

In most cases scanning one bar code sets the parameter value. For example, to set the baud rate to 19,200, scan the **Baud Rate 19,200** bar code under [Baud Rate on page 8-12](#). The scanner issues a fast warble beep and the LED turns green, signifying a successful parameter entry.

Other parameters require scanning several bar codes. See the parameter descriptions for this procedure.

## Errors While Scanning

Unless otherwise specified, to correct an error during a scanning sequence, just re-scan the correct parameter.

## Simple Serial Interface Parameter Defaults

*Table 8-1* lists defaults for SSI host parameters. Change these values in one of two ways:

- Scan the appropriate bar codes in this chapter. The new value replaces the standard default value in memory. To recall default parameter values, see [Default Parameters on page 5-5](#).
- Download data through the device's serial port using SSI. Hexadecimal parameter numbers appear in this chapter below the parameter title, and option values appear in parenthesis beneath the accompanying bar codes. Refer to the *Simple Serial Interface (SSI) Programmer's Guide* for detailed instructions for changing parameters using this method.

✓ **NOTE** See [Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters](#) for all user preference, host, symbology, and miscellaneous default parameters.

**Table 8-3 SSI Interface Default Table**

Parameter	Parameter Number	SSI Number	Default	Page Number
<b>SSI Host Parameters</b>				
Select SSI Host	N/A	N/A	N/A	<a href="#">8-12</a>
Baud Rate	156	9Ch	9600	<a href="#">8-12</a>
Parity	158	9Eh	None	<a href="#">8-14</a>
Check Parity	151	97h	Disable	<a href="#">8-15</a>
Stop Bits	157	9Dh	1	<a href="#">8-15</a>
Software Handshaking	159	9Fh	ACK/NAK	<a href="#">8-16</a>
Host RTS Line State	154	9Ah	Low	<a href="#">8-17</a>
Decode Data Packet Format	238	EEh	Send Raw Decode Data	<a href="#">8-17</a>
Host Serial Response Timeout	155	9Bh	2 Seconds	<a href="#">8-18</a>
Host Character Timeout	239	EFh	200 msec	<a href="#">8-19</a>
Multipacket Option	334	F0h 4Eh	Option 1	<a href="#">8-20</a>
Interpacket Delay	335	F0h 4Fh	0 msec	<a href="#">8-21</a>
<b>Event Reporting</b>				
Decode Event	256	F0h 00h	Disable	<a href="#">8-22</a>
Boot Up Event	258	F0h 02h	Disable	<a href="#">8-23</a>
Parameter Event	259	F0h 03h	Disable	<a href="#">8-23</a>

✓ **NOTE** SSI interprets Prefix, Suffix1, and Suffix2 values listed in [Table I-1 on page I-1](#) differently than other interfaces. SSI does not recognize key categories, only the 3-digit decimal value. The default value of 7013 is interpreted as CR only.

## SSI Host Parameters

### Select SSI Host

To select SSI as the host interface, scan the following bar code.



SSI Host

### Baud Rate

#### Parameter # 156

#### SSI # 9Ch

Baud rate is the number of bits of data transmitted per second. Scan one of the following bar codes to set the scanner's baud rate to match the baud rate setting of the host device. Otherwise, data may not reach the host device or may reach it in distorted form.



\*Baud Rate 9600

(6)



Baud Rate 19,200

(7)



Baud Rate 38,400

(8)



Baud Rate 57,600

(10)

## Baud Rate (continued)



**Baud Rate 115,200  
(11)**



**Baud Rate 230,400  
(13)**



**Baud Rate 460,800  
(14)**



**Baud Rate 921,600  
(15)**

## Parity

### Parameter # 158

SSI # 9Eh

A parity check bit is the most significant bit of each ASCII coded character. Scan one of the following bar codes to select the parity type according to host device requirements:

- **Odd** - This sets the parity bit value to 0 or 1, based on data, to ensure that the coded character contains an odd number of 1 bits.
- **Even** - This sets the parity bit value to 0 or 1, based on data, to ensure that the coded character contains an even number of 1 bits.
- **None** - No parity bit is required.



Odd  
(2)



Even  
(1)



\*None  
(0)

## Check Parity

**Parameter # 151**

**SSI # 97h**

Scan one of the following bar codes to select whether to check the parity of received characters. See *Parity* to select the type of parity.



**\*Do Not Check Parity  
(0)**



**Check Parity  
(1)**

## Stop Bits

**Parameter # 157**

**SSI # 9Dh**

The stop bit(s) at the end of each transmitted character marks the end of transmission of one character and prepares the receiving device for the next character in the serial data stream. Scan one of the following bar codes to set the number of stop bits (one or two) based on the number the receiving host can accommodate.



**\*1 Stop Bit  
(1)**



**2 Stop Bits  
(2)**

## Software Handshaking

### Parameter # 159

SSI # 9Fh

This parameter offers control of data transmission in addition to the control hardware handshaking offers. Hardware handshaking is always enabled; you cannot disable it.

Options:

- **Disable ACK/NAK Handshaking** - The scanner neither generates nor expects ACK/NAK handshaking packets.
- **Enable ACK/NAK Handshaking** - After transmitting data, the scanner expects either an ACK or NAK response from the host. The scanner also ACKs or NAKs messages from the host.

The scanner waits up to the programmable *Host Serial Response Timeout* to receive an ACK or NAK. If the scanner does not get a response in this time, it resends its data up to two times before discarding the data and declaring a transmission error.



Disable ACK/NAK  
(0)



\*Enable ACK/NAK  
(1)

## Host RTS Line State

**Parameter # 154**

**SSI # 9Ah**

Scan one of the following bar codes to set the expected idle state of the Serial Host RTS line.

The SSI interface is used with host applications which also implement the SSI protocol. However, you can use the scanner in a "scan-and-transmit" mode to communicate with any standard serial communication software on a host PC (see *Decode Data Packet Format on page 8-17*). If transmission errors occur in this mode, the host PC may be asserting hardware handshaking lines which interfere with the SSI protocol. Scan the **High** bar code to address this problem.



\***Low**  
**(0)**



**High**  
**(1)**

## Decode Data Packet Format

**Parameter # 238**

**SSI # EEh**

Scan one of the following bar codes to select whether to transmit decoded data in raw format (unpacketized), or with the packet format defined by the serial protocol.

Selecting the raw format disables ACK/NAK handshaking for decode data.



\***Send Raw Decode Data**  
**(0)**



**Send Packeted Decode Data**  
**(1)**

## Host Serial Response Timeout

**Parameter # 155**

**SSI # 9Bh**

Scan one of the following bar codes to specify how long the scanner waits for an ACK or NAK before resending. Also, if the scanner wants to send, and the host has already been granted permission to send, the scanner waits for the designated timeout before declaring an error.

✓ **NOTE** Other values are available via SSI command.



**\*Low - 2 Seconds**  
**(20)**



**Medium - 5 Seconds**  
**(50)**



**High - 7.5 Seconds**  
**(75)**



**Maximum - 9.9 Seconds**  
**(99)**

## Host Character Timeout

### Parameter # 239

SSI # EFh

Scan one of the following bar codes to specify the maximum time the scanner waits between characters transmitted by the host before discarding the received data and declaring an error.

✓ **NOTE** Other values are available via SSI command.



\*Low - 200 msec  
(20)



Medium - 500 msec  
(50)



High - 750 msec  
(75)



Maximum - 990 msec  
(99)

## Multipacket Option

**Parameter # 334**

**SSI # F0h 4Eh**

Scan one of the following bar codes to control ACK/NAK handshaking for multi-packet transmissions:

- **Multi-Packet Option 1** - The host sends an ACK/NAK for each data packet during a multi-packet transmission.
- **Multi-Packet Option 2** - The scanner sends data packets continuously, with no ACK/NAK handshaking to pace the transmission. The host, if overrun, can use hardware handshaking to temporarily delay scanner transmissions. At the end of transmission, the scanner waits for a CMD\_ACK or CMD\_NAK.
- **Multi-Packet Option 3** - This is the same as option 2 with the addition of a programmable interpacket delay. See [Interpacket Delay on page 8-21](#) to set this delay.



\*Multipacket Option 1  
(0)



Multipacket Option 2  
(1)



Multipacket Option 3  
(2)

## Interpacket Delay

Parameter # 335

SSI # F0h 4Fh

Scan one of the following bar codes to specify the interpacket delay if you selected **Multipacket Option 3**.



**NOTE** Other values are available via SSI command.



\*Minimum - 0 msec  
(0)



Low - 25 msec  
(25)



Medium - 50 msec  
(50)



High - 75 msec  
(75)



Maximum - 99 msec  
(99)

## Event Reporting

The host can request the scanner to provide certain information (events) relative to scanner behavior. Scan the following bar codes to enable or disable the events listed in *Table 8-4* and on the following pages.

**Table 8-4 Event Codes**

Event Class	Event	Code Reported
Decode Event	Non-parameter decode	0x01
Boot Up Event	System power-up	0x03
Parameter Event	Parameter entry error	0x07
	Parameter stored	0x08
	Defaults set (and parameter event is enabled by default)	0x0A
	Number expected	0x0F

### Decode Event

#### Parameter # 256

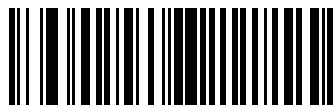
#### SSI # F0h 00h

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable Decode Event.

- **Enable Decode Event** - The scanner generates a message to the host upon a successful bar code decode.
- **Disable Decode Event** - No notification is sent.



Enable Decode Event  
(1)



\*Disable Decode Event  
(0)

## Boot Up Event

**Parameter # 258**

**SSI # F0h 02h**

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable Boot Up Event:

- **Enable Boot Up Event** - The scanner generates a message to the host whenever power is applied.
- **Disable Boot Up Event** - No notification is sent.



Enable Boot Up Event  
(1)



\*Disable Boot Up Event  
(0)

## Parameter Event

**Parameter # 259**

**SSI # F0h 03h**

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable Parameter Event:

- **Enable Parameter Event** - The scanner generates a message to the host when one of the events specified in [Table 8-4 on page 8-22](#) occurs.
- **Disable Parameter Event** - No notification is sent.



Enable Parameter Event  
(1)



\*Disable Parameter Event  
(0)



# CHAPTER 9 RS-232 INTERFACE

## Introduction

This chapter describes how to set up the scanner with an RS-232 host. The scanner uses the RS-232 interface to connect to point-of-sale devices, host computers, or other devices with an available RS-232 port (e.g., com port).

The scanner ships with the settings shown in [Table 9-1 on page 9-3](#) (also see [Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters](#) for all defaults). If the default values suit requirements, programming is not necessary.

If your host does not appear in [Table 9-2](#), refer to the documentation for the host device to set communication parameters to match the host.



**NOTE** The scanner uses TTL RS-232 signal levels, which interface with most system architectures. For system architectures requiring RS-232C signal levels, Zebra offers different cables providing TTL-to-RS-232C conversion. Contact the Zebra Support & Downloads website for more information.

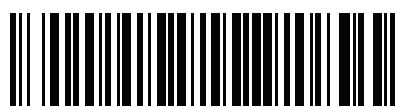
## Setting Parameters

To set feature values, scan a single bar code or a short bar code sequence. The settings are stored in non-volatile memory and are preserved even when the scanner powers down.



**NOTE** Most computer monitors allow scanning bar codes directly on the screen. When scanning from the screen, be sure to set the document magnification to a level where you can see the bar code clearly, and bars and/or spaces do not merge.

To return all features to default values, scan [Set Factory Defaults on page 5-5](#). Throughout the programming bar code menus, asterisks (\*) indicate default values.



\* Indicates default

\*Enable Parameter

Feature/option

## Scanning Sequence Examples

In most cases scanning one bar code sets the parameter value. For example, to set the baud rate to 19,200, scan the **Baud Rate 19,200** bar code under [Baud Rate on page 9-8](#). The scanner issues a fast warble beep and the LED turns green, signifying a successful parameter entry.

Other parameters require scanning several bar codes. See the parameter descriptions for this procedure.

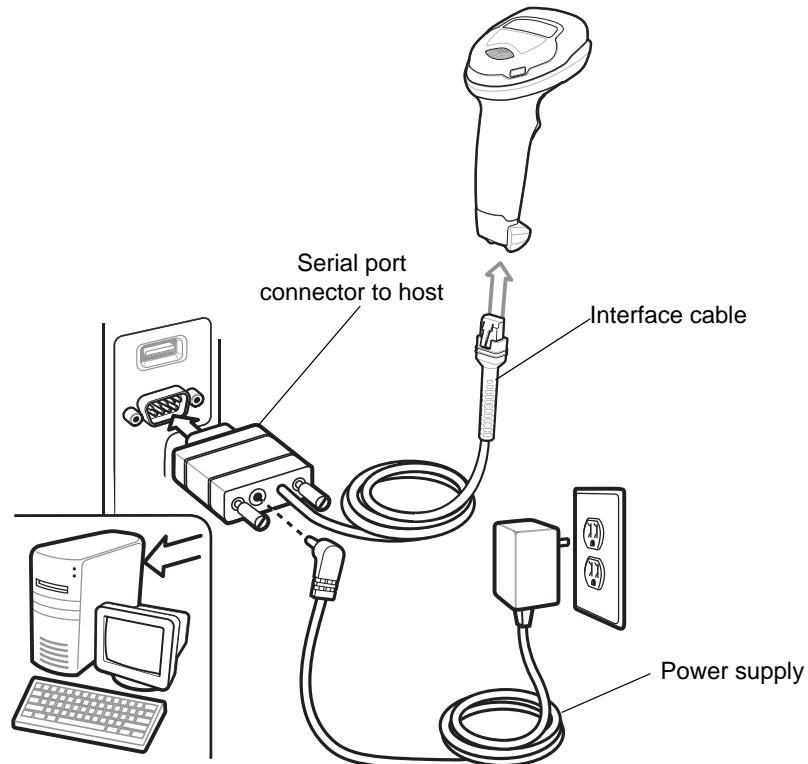
## Errors While Scanning

Unless otherwise specified, to correct an error during a scanning sequence, just re-scan the correct parameter.

---

## Connecting an RS-232 Interface

Connect the scanner directly to the host computer.



**Figure 9-1** RS-232 Connection

✓ **NOTE** Interface cables vary depending on configuration. The connectors can be different than those illustrated in [Figure 9-1](#), but the steps to connect the scanner are the same.

1. Attach the modular connector of the RS-232 interface cable to the cable interface port on the scanner. See [Installing the Interface Cable on page 1-3](#).
2. Connect the other end of the RS-232 interface cable to the serial port on the host.
3. If required, connect the power supply to the serial connector end of the RS-232 interface cable. Plug the power supply into an appropriate outlet.

4. The scanner automatically detects the host interface type and uses the default setting. If the default (\*) does not meet your requirements, select another RS-232 host type by scanning the appropriate bar code from [RS-232 Host Types on page 9-6](#).
5. To modify any other parameter options, scan the appropriate bar codes in this chapter.

If problems occur with the system, see [Troubleshooting on page 4-3](#).

## RS-232 Parameter Defaults

*Table 9-1* lists defaults for RS-232 host parameters. Change these values in one of two ways:

- Scan the appropriate bar codes in this chapter. The new value replaces the standard default value in memory. To recall default parameter values, see [Default Parameters on page 5-5](#).
- Configure the scanner using the 123Scan<sup>2</sup> configuration program. See [Chapter 2, 123Scan and Software Tools](#).

✓ **NOTE** See [Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters](#) for all user preference, host, symbology, and miscellaneous default parameters.

**Table 9-1 RS-232 Interface Parameter Defaults**

Parameter	Default	Page Number
<b>RS-232 Host Parameters</b>		
RS-232 Host Types	Standard	<a href="#">9-6</a>
Baud Rate	9600	<a href="#">9-8</a>
Parity	None	<a href="#">9-9</a>
Stop Bits	1 Stop Bit	<a href="#">9-9</a>
Data Bits	8-bit	<a href="#">9-10</a>
Check Receive Errors	Enable	<a href="#">9-10</a>
Hardware Handshaking	None	<a href="#">9-11</a>
Software Handshaking	None	<a href="#">9-13</a>
Host Serial Response Timeout	2 Sec	<a href="#">9-15</a>
RTS Line State	Low RTS	<a href="#">9-16</a>
Beep on <BEL>	Disable	<a href="#">9-16</a>
Intercharacter Delay	0 msec	<a href="#">9-17</a>
Nixdorf Beep/LED Options	Normal Operation	<a href="#">9-18</a>
Bar Codes with Unknown Characters	Send Bar Code With Unknown Characters	<a href="#">9-18</a>

## RS-232 Host Parameters

Various RS-232 hosts use their own parameter default settings. Selecting standard, ICL, Fujitsu, Wincor-Nixdorf Mode A, Wincor-Nixdorf Mode B, OPOS/JPOS, Olivetti, Omron, or Common Use Terminal Equipment (CUTE-LP/LG bar code readers) sets the defaults listed in [Table 9-2](#).

**Table 9-2** Terminal Specific RS-232

Parameter	ICL	Fujitsu	Wincor-Nixdorf Mode A	Wincor-Nixdorf Mode B/OPOS/JPOS	Olivetti	Omron	CUTE
Transmit Code ID	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Data Transmission Format	Data/Suffix	Data/Suffix	Data/Suffix	Data/Suffix	Prefix/Data/Suffix	Data/Suffix	Prefix/Data/Suffix
Suffix	CR (1013)	CR (1013)	CR (1013)	CR (1013)	ETX (1002)	CR (1013)	CR (1013) ETX (1003)
Baud Rate	9600	9600	9600	9600	9600	9600	9600
Parity	Even	None	Odd	Odd	Even	None	Even
Hardware Handshaking	RTS/CTS Option 3	None	RTS/CTS Option 3	RTS/CTS Option 3	None	None	None
Software Handshaking	None	None	None	None	ACK/NAK	None	None
Serial Response Timeout	9.9 Sec.	2 Sec.	None	None	9.9 Sec.	9.9 Sec.	9.9 Sec.
Stop Bit Select	One	One	One	One	One	One	One
ASCII Format	8-Bit	8-Bit	8-Bit	8-Bit	7-Bit	8-Bit	7-Bit
Beep On <BEL>	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable
RTS Line State	High	Low	Low	Low = No data to send	Low	High	High
Prefix	None	None	None	None	STX (1003)	None	STX (1002)

In the Wincor-Nixdorf Mode A/B, if CTS is low, scanning is disabled. When CTS is high, scanning is enabled. If you scan Wincor-Nixdorf RS-232 Mode A/B without connecting the scanner to the proper host, it may appear unable to scan. If this happens, scan a different RS-232 host type within 5 seconds of cycling power to the scanner.

The CUTE host disables all parameter scanning, including Set Defaults. If you inadvertently select CUTE, scan \*Enable Parameter Bar Code Scanning (1) on page 5-6, then change the host selection.

## RS-232 Host Parameters (continued)

Selecting ICL, Fujitsu, Wincor-Nixdorf Mode A, Wincor-Nixdorf Mode B, OPOS/JPOS, Olivetti, Omron, or CUTE-LP/LG bar code readers transmits the code ID characters listed in [Table 9-3](#). These code ID characters are not programmable and are separate from the Transmit Code ID feature. Do not enable the Transmit Code ID feature for these terminals.

**Table 9-3 Terminal Specific Code ID Characters**

Code Type	ICL	Fujitsu	Wincor-Nixdorf Mode A	Wincor-Nixdorf Mode B/OPOS/JPOS	Olivetti	Omron	CUTE
<b>UPC-A</b>	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
<b>UPC-E</b>	E	E	C	C	C	E	None
<b>EAN-8/JAN-8</b>	FF	FF	B	B	B	FF	None
<b>EAN-13/JAN-13</b>	F	F	A	A	A	F	A
<b>Code 39</b>	C <len>	None	M	M	M <len>	C <len>	3
<b>Code 39 Full ASCII</b>	None	None	M	M	None	None	3
<b>Codabar</b>	N <len>	None	N	N	N <len>	N <len>	None
<b>Code 128</b>	L <len>	None	K	K	K <len>	L <len>	5
<b>I 2 of 5</b>	I <len>	None	I	I	I <len>	I <len>	1
<b>Code 93</b>	None	None	L	L	L <len>	None	None
<b>D 2 of 5</b>	H <len>	None	H	H	H <len>	H <len>	2
<b>GS1-128</b>	L <len>	None	P	P	P <len>	L <len>	5
<b>MSI</b>	None	None	O	O	O <len>	None	None
<b>Bookland EAN</b>	F	F	A	A	A	F	None
<b>Trioptic</b>	None	None	None	None	None	None	None
<b>Code 11</b>	None	None	None	None	None	None	None
<b>IATA</b>	H<len>	None	H	H	H<len>	H<len>	2
<b>Code 32</b>	None	None	None	None	None	None	None
<b>GS1 DataBar Variants</b>	None	None	E	E	None	None	None
<b>PDF417</b>	None	None	Q	Q	None	None	6
<b>Data Matrix</b>	None	None	R	R	None	None	4
<b>GS1 Data Matrix</b>	None	None	W	W	None	None	None
<b>QR Codes</b>	None	None	U	U	None	None	7
<b>GS1 QR</b>	None	None	X	X	None	None	None

**Table 9-3 Terminal Specific Code ID Characters (Continued)**

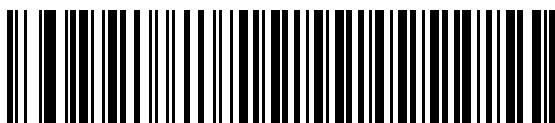
Code Type	ICL	Fujitsu	Wincor-Nixdorf Mode A	Wincor-Nixdorf Mode B/OPOS/JPOS	Olivetti	Omron	CUTE
Aztec/Aztec Rune	None	None	V	V	None	None	8
Maxicode	None	None	T	T	None	None	None
MicroPDF	None	None	S	S	None	None	6

## RS-232 Host Types

To select an RS-232 host interface, scan one of the following bar codes.



**NOTE** For a list of supported scanner functionality by communication protocol, see [Appendix J, Communication Protocol Functionality](#).



\*Standard RS-232<sup>1</sup>



ICL RS-232



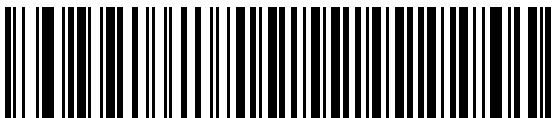
Wincor-Nixdorf RS-232 Mode A



Wincor-Nixdorf RS-232 Mode B

<sup>1</sup>Scanning Standard RS-232 activates the RS-232 driver, but does not change port settings (e.g., parity, data bits, handshaking). Selecting another RS-232 host type bar code changes these settings.

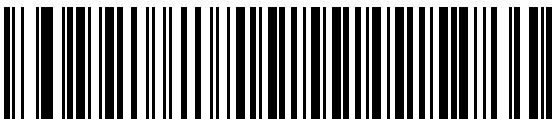
## RS-232 Host Types (continued)



Olivetti ORS4500



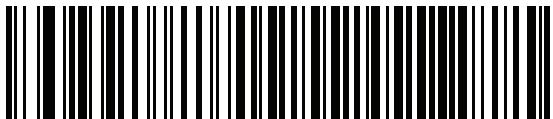
Omron



OPOS/JPOS



Fujitsu RS-232

CUTE<sup>2</sup>

<sup>2</sup>The CUTE host disables all parameter scanning, including Set Defaults. If you inadvertently select CUTE, scan [\\*Enable Parameter Bar Code Scanning \(1\) on page 5-6](#), and then change the host selection.

## Baud Rate

Baud rate is the number of bits of data transmitted per second. Scan one of the following bar codes to set the scanner's baud rate to match the baud rate setting of the host device. Otherwise, data may not reach the host device or may reach it in distorted form.



**NOTE** The scanner does not support baud rates below 9600.



\*Baud Rate 9600



Baud Rate 19,200



Baud Rate 38,400



Baud Rate 57,600

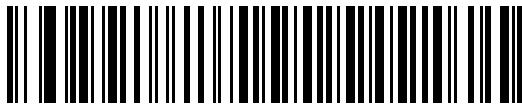


Baud Rate 115,200

## Parity

A parity check bit is the most significant bit of each ASCII coded character. Scan one of the following bar codes to select the parity type according to host device requirements:

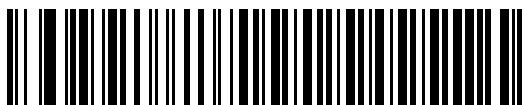
- **Odd** - This sets the parity bit value to 0 or 1, based on data, to ensure that the coded character contains an odd number of 1 bits.
- **Even** - This sets the parity bit value to 0 or 1, based on data, to ensure that the coded character contains an even number of 1 bits.
- **None** - No parity bit is required.



Odd



Even



\*None

## Stop Bits

The stop bit(s) at the end of each transmitted character marks the end of transmission of one character and prepares the receiving device for the next character in the serial data stream. Scan one of the following bar codes to set the number of stop bits (one or two) based on the number the receiving host can accommodate.



\*1 Stop Bit



2 Stop Bits

## Data Bits

This parameter allows the scanner to interface with devices requiring a 7-bit or 8-bit ASCII protocol.



7-bit



\*8-bit

## Check Receive Errors

Scan one of the following bar codes to set whether to check the parity, framing, and overrun of received characters. The parity value of received characters is verified against the value set for [Parity on page 9-9](#).



\*Check For Received Errors



Do Not Check For Received Errors

## Hardware Handshaking

The data interface consists of an RS-232 port designed to operate either with or without the hardware handshaking lines Request to Send (RTS) and Clear to Send (CTS).

If hardware handshaking and software handshaking are both enabled, hardware handshaking takes precedence.

 **NOTE** The DTR signal is jumpered to the active state.

Options:

- **None** - This disables hardware handshaking and transmits scan data as it becomes available.
- **Standard RTS/CTS** - This sets standard RTS/CTS hardware handshaking and transmits scanned data according to the following sequence:
  - a. The scanner reads the CTS line for activity:
    - If the CTS line is de-asserted, the scanner asserts the RTS line and waits up to *Host Serial Response Timeout* on page 9-15 for the host to assert CTS, and then transmits data when asserted. If, after the timeout, the CTS line is not asserted, the scanner sounds a transmit error and discards the data.
    - If CTS is asserted, the scanner waits up to *Host Serial Response Timeout* for the host to de-assert CTS. If after this timeout the CTS line is still asserted, the scanner sounds a transmit error and discards the scanned data.
  - b. The scanner de-asserts RTS after sending the last character of data.
  - c. The host negates CTS. The scanner checks for a de-asserted CTS upon the next data transmission.

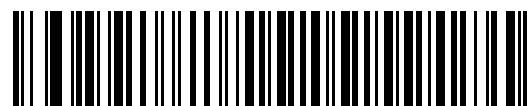
During data transmission, if CTS is deasserted for more than 50 ms between characters, the scanner sounds a transmit error and discards the data. The data must be re-scanned.
- **RTS/CTS Option 1** - The scanner asserts RTS before transmitting and ignores the state of CTS. The scanner de-asserts RTS when transmission completes.
- **RTS/CTS Option 2** - RTS is always high or low (user-programmed logic level). However, the scanner waits for the host to assert CTS before transmitting data. If CTS is not asserted within the *Host Serial Response Timeout*, the scanner sounds a transmit error and discards the data. During data transmission, if CTS is deasserted for more than 50 ms between characters, the scanner sounds a transmit error and discards the data.
- **RTS/CTS Option 3** - This transmits scanned data according to the following sequence:
  - a. The scanner asserts RTS before data transmission, regardless of the state of CTS.
  - b. The scanner waits up to the *Host Serial Response Timeout* for the host to assert CTS, and then transmits data when asserted. If, after the timeout, the CTS line is not asserted, the scanner sounds a transmit error and discards the data.
  - c. The scanner de-asserts RTS after sending the last character of data.
  - d. The host negates CTS. The scanner checks for a de-asserted CTS upon the next data transmission.

During data transmission, if CTS is deasserted for more than 50 ms between characters, the scanner sounds a transmit error and discards the data. The data must be re-scanned.

## Hardware Handshaking (continued)



\*None



Standard RTS/CTS



RTS/CTS Option 1



RTS/CTS Option 2



RTS/CTS Option 3

## Software Handshaking

This parameter offers control of data transmission in addition to, or instead of, that offered by hardware handshaking. If software handshaking and hardware handshaking are both enabled, hardware handshaking takes precedence.

Options:

- **None** - This transmits data immediately. The scanner expects no response from the host.
- **ACK/NAK** - After transmitting data, the scanner waits for an ACK or NAK response from the host. If it receives a NAK, the scanner transmits the data again and waits for an ACK or NAK. After three unsuccessful attempts to send data after receiving NAKs, the scanner sounds a transmit error and discards the data.

The scanner waits up to the programmable *Host Serial Response Timeout* to receive an ACK or NAK. If the scanner does not get a response in this time, it sounds a transmit error and discards the data. There are no reattempts.

- **ENQ** - The scanner waits for an ENQ character from the host before transmitting data. If it does not receive an ENQ within the *Host Serial Response Timeout*, the scanner sounds a transmit error and discards the data. The host must transmit an ENQ character at least every *Host Serial Response Timeout* to prevent transmission errors.
- **ACK/NAK with ENQ** - This combines the two previous options. An additional ENQ is not required to re-transmit data due to a NAK from the host.
- **XON/XOFF** - An XOFF character stops data transmission until the scanner receives an XON character. There are two situations for XON/XOFF:
  - The scanner receives an XOFF before it has data to send. When the scanner has data, it waits up to the *Host Serial Response Timeout* for an XON character before transmitting. If it does not receive the XON within this time, the scanner sounds a transmit error and discards the data.
  - The scanner receives an XOFF during data transmission and stops transmission after sending the current byte. When the scanner receives an XON character, it sends the rest of the data. The scanner waits indefinitely for the XON.

## Software Handshaking (continued)



\*None



ACK/NAK



ENQ



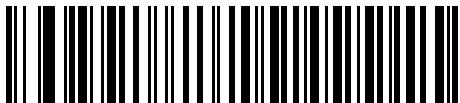
ACK/NAK with ENQ



XON/XOFF

## Host Serial Response Timeout

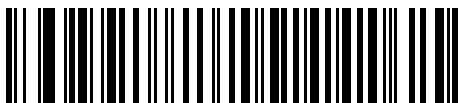
Scan one of the following bar codes to specify how long the scanner waits for an ACK, NAK, or CTS before determining that a transmission error occurred. This only applies when in one of the ACK/NAK software handshaking modes, or RTS/CTS hardware handshaking mode.



\*Minimum: 2 Seconds



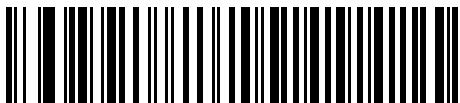
Low: 2.5 Seconds



Medium: 5 Seconds



High: 7.5 Seconds



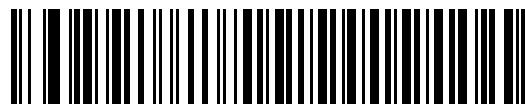
Maximum: 9.9 Seconds

## RTS Line State

Scan one of the following bar codes to set the idle state of the serial host RTS line to **Low RTS** or **High RTS**.



\*Host: Low RTS



Host: High RTS

## Beep on <BEL>

Scan one of the following bar codes to set whether the scanner issues a beep when it detects a <BEL> character on the RS-232 serial line. <BEL> indicates an illegal entry or other important event.



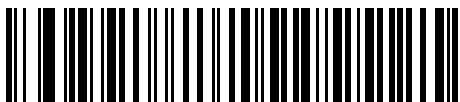
Beep On <BEL> Character  
(Enable)



\*Do Not Beep On <BEL> Character  
(Disable)

## Intercharacter Delay

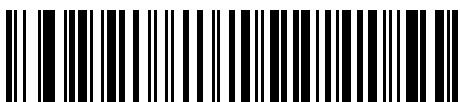
Scan one of the following bar codes to specify the intercharacter delay inserted between character transmissions.



\*Minimum: 0 msec



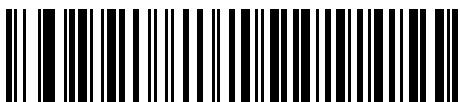
Low: 25 msec



Medium: 50 msec



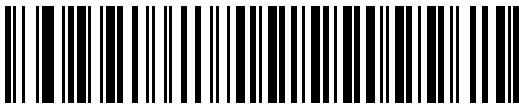
High: 75 msec



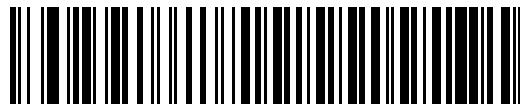
Maximum: 99 msec

## Nixdorf Beep/LED Options

If you selected Nixdorf Mode B, scan one of the following bar codes to indicate when the scanner beeps and turns on its LED after a decode.



\*Normal Operation  
(Beep/LED Immediately After Decode)



Beep/LED After Transmission

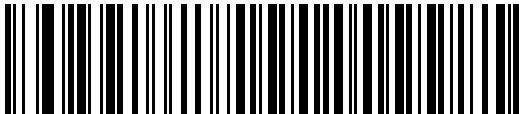


Beep/LED After CTS Pulse

## Bar Codes with Unknown Characters

Unknown characters are characters the host does not recognize. Scan **Send Bar Codes With Unknown Characters** to send all bar code data except for unknown characters. The scanner issues no error beeps.

Scan **Do Not Send Bar Codes With Unknown Characters** to send bar code data up to the first unknown character. The scanner issues an error beep.



\*Send Bar Codes With Unknown Characters



Do Not Send Bar Codes With Unknown Characters

---

## ASCII Character Set for RS-232

See [Appendix I, ASCII Character Sets](#) for Prefix/Suffix values. The values in [Table I-1](#) can be assigned as prefixes or suffixes for ASCII character data transmission.



# CHAPTER 10 IBM 468X / 469X INTERFACE

## Introduction

This chapter describes how to set up the scanner with an IBM 468X/469X host.

The scanner ships with the settings shown in [Table 10-1 on page 10-3](#) (also see [Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters](#) for all defaults). If the default values suit requirements, programming is not necessary.

## Setting Parameters

To set feature values, scan a single bar code or a short bar code sequence. The settings are stored in non-volatile memory and are preserved even when the scanner powers down.



**NOTE** Most computer monitors allow scanning bar codes directly on the screen. When scanning from the screen, be sure to set the document magnification to a level where you can see the bar code clearly, and bars and/or spaces do not merge.

To return all features to default values, scan [Set Factory Defaults on page 5-5](#). Throughout the programming bar code menus, asterisks (\*) indicate default values.



## Scanning Sequence Examples

In most cases scanning one bar code sets the parameter value. For example, to select the Port 9B address, scan the **Hand-Held Scanner Emulation (Port 9B)** bar code under [Port Address on page 10-4](#). The scanner issues a fast warble beep and the LED turns green, signifying a successful parameter entry.

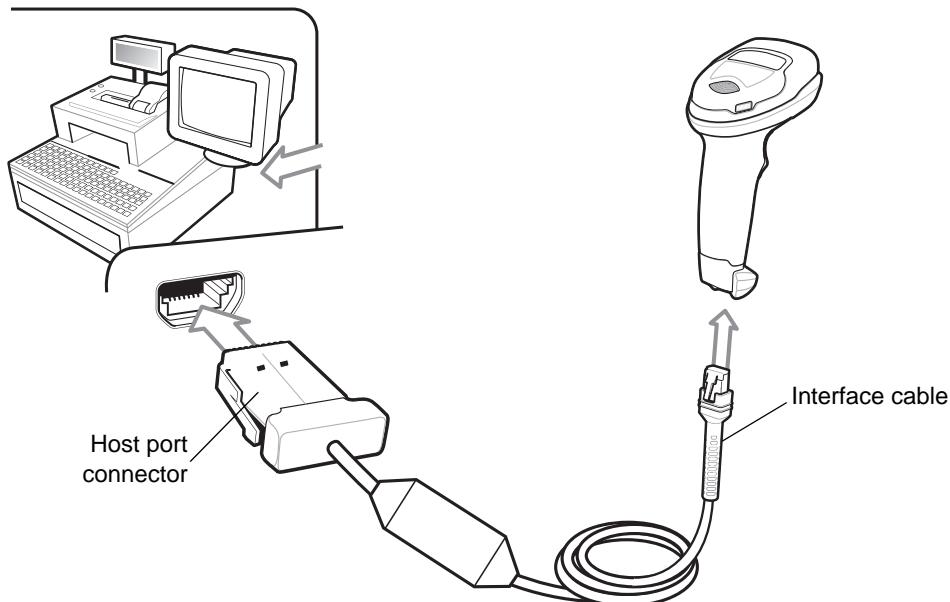
Other parameters require scanning several bar codes. See the parameter descriptions for this procedure.

## Errors While Scanning

Unless otherwise specified, to correct an error during a scanning sequence, just re-scan the correct parameter.

## Connecting an IBM 468X/469X Host

Connect the scanner directly to the host computer.



**Figure 10-1 IBM Connection**

✓ **NOTE** Interface cables vary depending on configuration. The connectors can be different than those illustrated in [Figure 10-1](#), but the steps to connect the scanner are the same.

1. Attach the modular connector of the IBM 46XX interface cable to the cable interface port on the scanner. See [Installing the Interface Cable on page 1-3](#).
2. Connect the other end of the IBM 46XX interface cable to the appropriate port on the host (typically Port 9).
3. The scanner automatically detects the host interface type, but there is no default setting. Scan the appropriate bar code from [Port Address on page 10-4](#) to select the port address.
4. To modify any other parameter options, scan the appropriate bar codes in this chapter.

✓ **NOTE** The only required configuration is the port address. The IBM system typically controls other scanner parameters.

If problems occur with the system, see [Troubleshooting on page 4-3](#).

## IBM Parameter Defaults

*Table 10-1* lists defaults for IBM host parameters. Change these values in one of two ways:

- Scan the appropriate bar codes in this chapter. The new value replaces the standard default value in memory. To recall default parameter values, see [Default Parameters on page 5-5](#).
- Configure the scanner using the 123Scan<sup>2</sup> configuration program. See [Chapter 2, 123Scan and Software Tools](#).

✓ **NOTE** See [Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters](#) for all user preference, host, symbology, and miscellaneous default parameters.

**Table 10-1 IBM 468X/469X Interface Parameter Defaults**

Parameter	Default	Page Number
<b>IBM 468X/469X Host Parameters</b>		
Port Address	None	<a href="#">10-4</a>
Convert Unknown to Code 39	Disable	<a href="#">10-5</a>
RS-485 Beep Directive	Ignore	<a href="#">10-5</a>
RS-485 Bar Code Configuration Directive	Ignore	<a href="#">10-6</a>
IBM-485 Specification Version	Original Specification	<a href="#">10-6</a>

## IBM Host Parameters

### Port Address

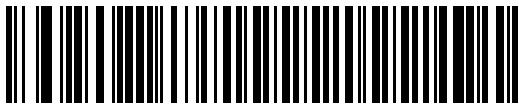
Scan one of the following bar codes to select the IBM 468X/469X port.



**NOTE** Scanning a Port Address bar code enables the RS-485 interface on the scanner.



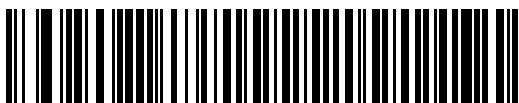
**NOTE** For a list of supported scanner functionality by communication protocol, see [Appendix J, Communication Protocol Functionality](#).



\*None



Hand-Held Scanner Emulation (Port 9B)



Non-IBM Scanner Emulation (Port 5B)



Table-Top Scanner Emulation (Port 17)

## Convert Unknown to Code 39

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable converting unknown bar code type data to Code 39.



**Enable Convert Unknown to Code 39**



**\*Disable Convert Unknown to Code 39**

## RS-485 Beep Directive

The IBM RS-485 host can send a beeper configuration request to the scanner. Scan **Ignore Beep Directive** to prevent the scanner from processing the host request. All directives are still acknowledged to the host as if they were processed.



**Honor Beep Directive**



**\*Ignore Beep Directive**

## RS-485 Bar Code Configuration Directive

The IBM RS-485 host can enable and disable code types. Scan **Ignore Bar Code Configuration Directive** to prevent the scanner from processing the host request. All directives are still acknowledged to the IBM RS-485 host as if they were processed.



Honor Bar Code Configuration Directive



\*Ignore Bar Code Configuration Directive

## IBM-485 Specification Version

### Parameter # 1729 (SSI # F8h 06h C1h)

The IBM interface specification version selected defines how code types are reported over the IBM interface.

When you scan **Original Specification**, only Symbologies that were historically supported on each individual port are reported as known. When you scan Version 2.0, all Symbologies covered in the newer IBM specification are reported as known with their respective code types.



\*Original Specification  
(0)



Version 2.0  
(1)

# CHAPTER 11 KEYBOARD WEDGE INTERFACE

## Introduction

This chapter describes how to set up a keyboard wedge interface with the scanner. The scanner connects between the keyboard and host computer and translates bar code data into keystrokes, which the host accepts as if they originated from the keyboard. This mode adds bar code reading functionality to a system designed for manual keyboard input. Keyboard keystrokes are simply passed through.

The scanner ships with the settings shown in [Table 11-1 on page 11-3](#) (also see [Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters](#) for all defaults). If the default values suit requirements, programming is not necessary.

## Setting Parameters

To set feature values, scan a single bar code or a short bar code sequence. The settings are stored in non-volatile memory and are preserved even when the scanner powers down.

- ✓ **NOTE** Most computer monitors allow scanning bar codes directly on the screen. When scanning from the screen, be sure to set the document magnification to a level where you can see the bar code clearly, and bars and/or spaces do not merge.

To return all features to default values, scan a bar code in [Default Parameters on page 5-5](#). Throughout the programming bar code menus, asterisks (\*) indicate default values.



## Scanning Sequence Examples

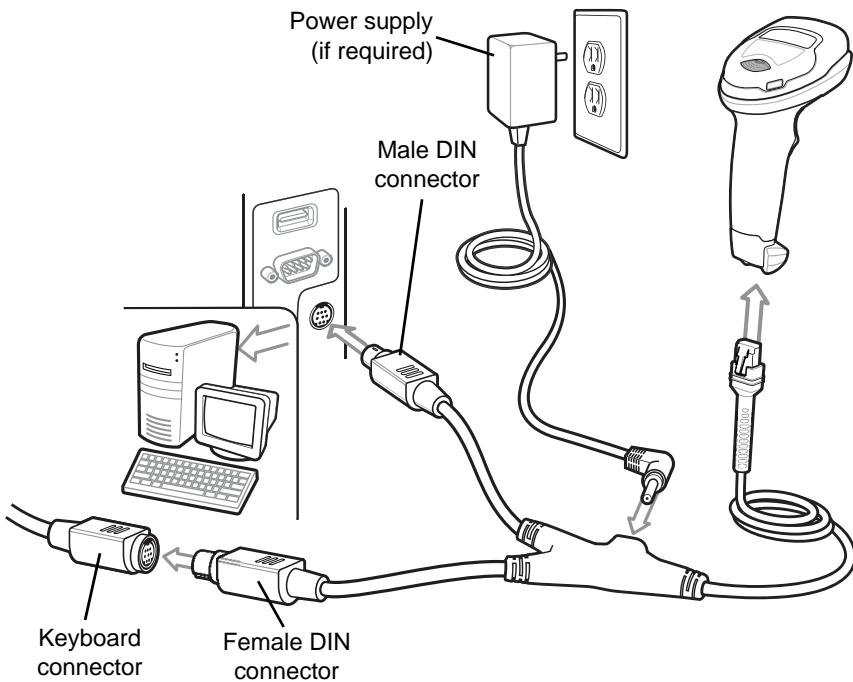
In most cases, scanning one bar code sets the parameter value. For example, to select a medium keystroke delay, scan the **Medium Delay (20 msec)** bar code under [Keystroke Delay on page 11-5](#). The scanner issues a fast warble beep and the LED turns green, signifying a successful parameter entry.

Other parameters require scanning several bar codes. See the parameter descriptions for this procedure.

## Errors While Scanning

Unless otherwise specified, to correct an error during a scanning sequence, just re-scan the correct parameter.

## Connecting a Keyboard Wedge Interface



**Figure 11-1** Keyboard Wedge Connection

✓ **NOTE** Interface cables vary depending on configuration. The connectors can be different than those illustrated in [Figure 11-1](#), but the steps to connect the scanner are the same.

1. Turn off the host and unplug the keyboard connector.
2. Attach the modular connector of the Y-cable to the cable interface port on the digital scanner. See [Installing the Interface Cable on page 1-3](#).
3. Connect the round male DIN host connector of the Y-cable to the keyboard port on the host device.
4. Connect the round female DIN keyboard connector of the Y-cable to the keyboard connector.
5. If required, attach the optional power supply to the connector in the middle of the Y-cable.
6. Ensure that all connections are secure.
7. Turn on the host system.
8. The digital scanner automatically detects the host interface type and uses the default setting. If the default (\*) does not meet your requirements, scan [IBM PC/AT & IBM PC Compatibles on page 11-4](#).
9. To modify any other parameter options, scan the appropriate bar codes in this guide.

If problems occur with the system, see [Troubleshooting on page 4-3](#).

## Keyboard Wedge Parameter Defaults

*Table 11-1* lists the defaults for Keyboard Wedge host parameters. To change any option, scan the appropriate bar code(s) in [Keyboard Wedge Host Parameters on page 11-4](#).

✓ **NOTE** See [Appendix B, Country Codes](#) for Keyboard Wedge Country Keyboard Types (Country Codes).

See [Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters](#) for all user preferences, hosts, symbologies, and miscellaneous default parameters.

**Table 11-1** Keyboard Wedge Host Default Table

Parameter	Default	Page Number
<b>Keyboard Wedge Host Parameters</b>		
Keyboard Wedge Host Type	IBM AT Notebook	<a href="#">11-4</a>
Bar Codes with Unknown Characters	Send Bar Codes with Unknown Characters	<a href="#">11-4</a>
Keystroke Delay	No Delay	<a href="#">11-5</a>
Intra-keystroke Delay	Disable	<a href="#">11-5</a>
Alternate Numeric Keypad Emulation	Enable	<a href="#">11-6</a>
Quick Keypad Emulation	Enable	<a href="#">11-6</a>
Simulated Caps Lock	Disable	<a href="#">11-7</a>
Caps Lock Override	Disable	<a href="#">11-7</a>
Convert Case	Do Not Convert	<a href="#">11-8</a>
Function Key Mapping	Disable	<a href="#">11-8</a>
FN1 Substitution	Disable	<a href="#">11-9</a>
Send Make and Break	Send	<a href="#">11-9</a>

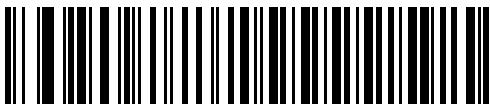
## Keyboard Wedge Host Parameters

### Keyboard Wedge Host Types

Select the Keyboard Wedge host by scanning one of the bar codes below.



**NOTE** For a list of supported scanner functionality by communication protocol, see [Appendix J, Communication Protocol Functionality](#).



IBM PC/AT & IBM PC Compatibles



\*IBM AT Notebook

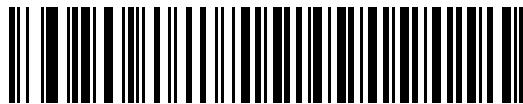
### Bar Codes with Unknown Characters

Unknown characters are characters the host does not recognize. Scan **Send Bar Codes With Unknown Characters** to send all bar code data except for unknown characters. The scanner issues no error beeps.

Scan **Do Not Send Bar Codes With Unknown Characters** to send bar code data up to the first unknown character. The scanner issues an error beep.



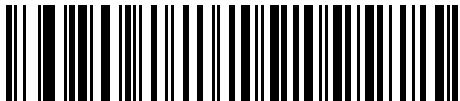
\*Send Bar Codes with Unknown Characters



Do Not Send Bar Codes with Unknown Characters

## Keystroke Delay

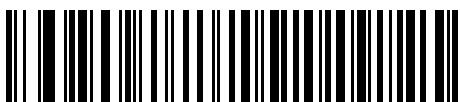
This is the delay in milliseconds between emulated keystrokes. Scan one of the following bar codes to increase the delay when hosts require a slower data transmission.



\*No Delay



Medium Delay (20 msec)



Long Delay (40 msec)

## Intra-keystroke Delay

Scan **Enable Intra-keystroke Delay** to insert an additional delay between each emulated key press and release. This also sets *Keystroke Delay* to a minimum of 5 msec.



Enable Intra-keystroke Delay



\*Disable Intra-keystroke Delay

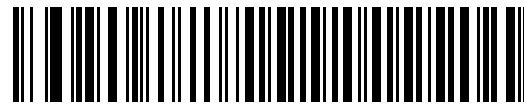
## Alternate Numeric Keypad Emulation

This allows emulation of most other country keyboard types not listed in [Appendix B, Country Codes](#) in a Microsoft® operating system environment.

- ✓ **NOTE** If your keyboard type is not listed in the country code list (see [USB and Keyboard Wedge Country Keyboard Types \(Country Codes\) on page B-2](#)), disable [Quick Keypad Emulation](#) on page 11-6 and ensure [Alternate Numeric Keypad Emulation](#) on page 11-6 is enabled.



\*Enable Alternate Numeric Keypad



Disable Alternate Numeric Keypad

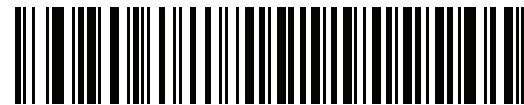
## Quick Keypad Emulation

This enables faster keypad emulation where character value sequences are only sent for characters not found on the keyboard.

- ✓ **NOTE** This option applies only when [Alternate Numeric Keypad Emulation](#) is enabled.



\*Enable Quick Keypad Emulation



Disable Quick Keypad Emulation

## Simulated Caps Lock

Scan **Enable Caps Lock** to invert upper and lower case characters on the bar code as if the Caps Lock state is enabled on the keyboard. This inversion occurs regardless of the keyboard's Caps Lock state. Note that Simulated Caps Lock applies to ASCII alpha characters only.



Enable Caps Lock



\*Disable Caps Lock

## Caps Lock Override

Scan **Enable Caps Lock Override** for AT or AT Notebook hosts to preserve the case of the data regardless of the state of the Caps Lock key. Therefore, an 'A' in the bar code transmits as an 'A' regardless of the setting of the keyboard's Caps Lock key.



Enable Caps Lock Override



\*Disable Caps Lock Override



**NOTE** If both Simulated Caps Lock and Caps Lock Override are enabled, Caps Lock Override takes precedence.

## Convert Case

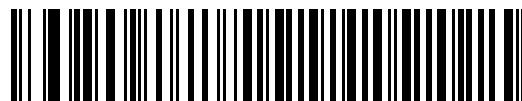
Scan one of the following bar codes to convert all bar code data to the selected case.



**NOTE** Convert Case applies to ASCII characters only.



Convert to Upper Case



Convert to Lower Case



\*Do Not Convert

## Function Key Mapping

ASCII values under 32 are normally sent as control key sequences (see [Table I-1 on page I-1](#)). Scan **Enable Function Key Mapping** to send the keys in bold in place of the standard key mapping. Table entries that do not have a bold entry remain the same whether or not you enable this parameter.



Enable Function Key Mapping



\*Disable Function Key Mapping

## FN1 Substitution

Scan **Enable FN1 Substitution** to replace FN1 characters in an EAN128 bar code with a user-selected keystroke (see [FN1 Substitution Values on page 5-34](#)).



**Enable FN1 Substitution**



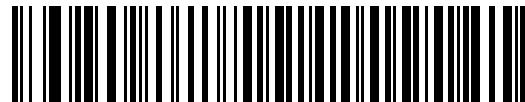
**\*Disable FN1 Substitution**

## Send Make and Break

Scan **Send Make and Break Scan Codes** to prevent sending the scan codes for releasing a key.



**\*Send Make and Break Scan Codes**



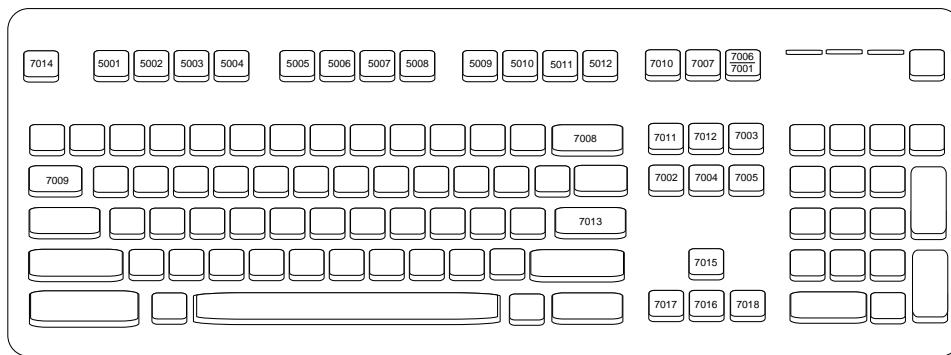
**Send Make Scan Code Only**



**NOTE** Windows-based systems must use **Send Make and Break Scan Codes**.

## Keyboard Map

The following keyboard map is a reference for prefix/suffix keystroke parameters. To program the prefix/suffix values, see the bar codes on [page 5-31](#).



**Figure 11-2 IBM PS2 Type Keyboard**

## ASCII Character Set for Keyboard Wedge

 **NOTE** Code 39 Full ASCII interprets the bar code special character (\$ + % /) preceding a Code 39 character and assigns an ASCII character value to the pair. For example, if you enable Code 39 Full ASCII and scan +B, it transmits as b, %J as ?, and %V as @. Scanning ABC%I outputs the keystroke equivalent of ABC >.

See [Appendix I, ASCII Character Sets](#) for the following:

- ASCII Character Set ([Table I-1 on page I-1](#))
- ALT Key Character Set ([Table I-2 on page I-6](#))
- GUI Key Character Set ([Table I-3 on page I-7](#))
- F Key Character Set ([Table I-5 on page I-10](#))
- Numeric Key Character Set ([Table I-6 on page I-11](#))
- Extended Key Character Set ([Table I-7 on page I-12](#)).

# CHAPTER 12 SYMOLOGIES

## Introduction

You can program the scanner to perform various functions, or activate different features. This chapter describes symbology features and provides programming bar codes for selecting these features.

The scanner ships with the settings shown in [Table 12-1 on page 12-2](#) (also see [Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters](#) for all defaults). If the default values suit requirements, programming is not necessary.

## Setting Parameters

To set feature values, scan a single bar code or a short bar code sequence. The settings are stored in non-volatile memory and are preserved even when the scanner powers down.



**NOTE** Most computer monitors allow scanning bar codes directly on the screen. When scanning from the screen, be sure to set the document magnification to a level where you can see the bar code clearly, and bars and/or spaces do not merge.

If not using a USB cable, select a host type (see each host chapter for specific host information) after the power-up beeps sound. This is only necessary upon the first power-up when connected to a new host.

To return all features to default values, see [Default Parameters on page 5-5](#). Throughout the programming bar code menus, asterisks (\*) indicate default values.



## Scanning Sequence Examples

In most cases, scanning one bar code sets the parameter value. For example, to transmit bar code data without the UPC-A check digit, scan the **Do Not Transmit UPC-A Check Digit** bar code under [Transmit UPC-A Check Digit on page 12-18](#). The scanner issues a fast warble beep and the LED turns green, signifying a successful parameter entry.

Other parameters, such as **Set Lengths for D 2 of 5**, require scanning several bar codes. See the parameter descriptions for this procedure.

## Errors While Scanning

Unless otherwise specified, to correct an error during a scanning sequence, just re-scan the correct parameter.

---

## Symbology Parameter Defaults

*Table 12-1* lists defaults for all symbology parameters. Change these values in one of two ways:

- Scan the appropriate bar codes in this chapter. The new value replaces the standard default value in memory. To recall the default parameter values, see [Default Parameters on page 5-5](#).
- Configure the scanner using the 123Scan<sup>2</sup> configuration program. See [Chapter 12, Symbologies](#).



**NOTE** See [Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters](#) for all user preference, host, symbology, and miscellaneous default parameters.

**Table 12-1 Symbology Parameter Defaults**

Parameter	Parameter Number <sup>1</sup>	SSI Number <sup>2</sup>	Default	Page Number
Enable/Disable All Code Types				12-8
<b>1D Symbologies</b>				
<b>UPC/EAN/JAN</b>				
UPC-A	1	01h	Enable	12-8
UPC-E	2	02h	Enable	12-9
UPC-E1	12	0Ch	Disable	12-9
EAN-8/JAN 8	4	04h	Enable	12-10
EAN-13/JAN 13	3	03h	Enable	12-10
Bookland EAN	83	53h	Disable	12-11
Bookland ISBN Format	576	F1h 40h	ISBN-10	12-12
ISSN EAN	617	F1h 69h	Disable	12-12

1. Parameter number decimal values are used for programming via RSM commands.  
2. SSI number hex values are used for programming via SSI commands.

**Table 12-1 Symbology Parameter Defaults (Continued)**

Parameter	Parameter Number <sup>1</sup>	SSI Number <sup>2</sup>	Default	Page Number
Decode UPC/EAN/JAN Supplements (2 and 5 digits)	16	10h	Ignore	<a href="#">12-13</a>
User-Programmable Supplements			000	<a href="#">12-16</a>
Supplemental 1:	579	F1h 43h		
Supplemental 2:	580	F1h 44h		
UPC/EAN/JAN Supplemental Redundancy	80	50h	10	<a href="#">12-16</a>
Decode UPC/EAN/JAN Supplemental AIM ID	672	F1h A0h	Combined	<a href="#">12-17</a>
Transmit UPC-A Check Digit	40	28h	Enable	<a href="#">12-18</a>
Transmit UPC-E Check Digit	41	29h	Enable	<a href="#">12-18</a>
Transmit UPC-E1 Check Digit	42	2Ah	Enable	<a href="#">12-19</a>
UPC-A Preamble	34	22h	System Character	<a href="#">12-20</a>
UPC-E Preamble	35	23h	System Character	<a href="#">12-21</a>
UPC-E1 Preamble	36	24h	System Character	<a href="#">12-22</a>
Convert UPC-E to A	37	25h	Disable	<a href="#">12-23</a>
Convert UPC-E1 to A	38	26h	Disable	<a href="#">12-23</a>
EAN/JAN Zero Extend	39	27h	Disable	<a href="#">12-24</a>
UCC Coupon Extended Code	85	55h	Disable	<a href="#">12-24</a>
Coupon Report	730	F1h DAh	New Coupon Format	<a href="#">12-25</a>
UPC Reduced Quiet Zone	1289	F8h 05h 09h	Disable	<a href="#">12-25</a>

**Code 128**

Code 128	8	08h	Enable	<a href="#">12-26</a>
Set Lengths for Code 128	209, 210	D1h, D2h	1 - 55	<a href="#">12-26</a>
GS1-128 (formerly UCC/EAN-128)	14	0Eh	Enable	<a href="#">12-27</a>
ISBT 128	84	54h	Disable	<a href="#">12-28</a>
ISBT Concatenation	577	F1h 41h	Disable	<a href="#">12-29</a>
Check ISBT Table	578	F1h 42h	Enable	<a href="#">12-30</a>
ISBT Concatenation Redundancy	223	DFh	10	<a href="#">12-30</a>
Code 128 <FNC4>	1254	F8h 04h E6h	Honor	<a href="#">12-31</a>

1. Parameter number decimal values are used for programming via RSM commands.

2. SSI number hex values are used for programming via SSI commands.

**Table 12-1 Symbology Parameter Defaults (Continued)**

Parameter	Parameter Number <sup>1</sup>	SSI Number <sup>2</sup>	Default	Page Number
Code 128 Security Level	751	F1h EFh	Security Level 1	<a href="#">12-31</a>
Code 128 Reduced Quiet Zone	1208	F8h 04h B8h	Disable	<a href="#">12-32</a>
<b>Code 39</b>				
Code 39	0	00h	Enable	<a href="#">12-33</a>
Trioptic Code 39	13	0Dh	Disable	<a href="#">12-33</a>
Convert Code 39 to Code 32 (Italian Pharmacy Code)	86	56h	Disable	<a href="#">12-34</a>
Code 32 Prefix	231	E7h	Disable	<a href="#">12-34</a>
Set Lengths for Code 39	18, 19	12h, 13h	1 - 55	<a href="#">12-35</a>
Code 39 Check Digit Verification	48	30h	Disable	<a href="#">12-36</a>
Transmit Code 39 Check Digit	43	2Bh	Disable	<a href="#">12-37</a>
Code 39 Full ASCII Conversion	17	11h	Disable	<a href="#">12-37</a>
Code 39 Security Level	750	F1h EEh	Security Level 1	<a href="#">12-38</a>
Code 39 Reduced Quiet Zone	1209	F8h 04h B9h	Disable	<a href="#">12-40</a>
<b>Code 93</b>				
Code 93	9	09h	Enable	<a href="#">12-40</a>
Set Lengths for Code 93	26, 27	1Ah, 1Bh	1 - 55	<a href="#">12-41</a>
<b>Code 11</b>				
Code 11	10	0Ah	Disable	<a href="#">12-43</a>
Set Lengths for Code 11	28, 29	1Ch, 1Dh	4 to 55	<a href="#">12-43</a>
Code 11 Check Digit Verification	52	34h	Disable	<a href="#">12-45</a>
Transmit Code 11 Check Digit(s)	47	2Fh	Disable	<a href="#">12-46</a>
<b>Interleaved 2 of 5 (ITF)</b>				
Interleaved 2 of 5 (ITF)	6	06h	Enable	<a href="#">12-46</a>
Set Lengths for I 2 of 5	22, 23	16h, 17h	6 to 55	<a href="#">12-47</a>
I 2 of 5 Check Digit Verification	49	31h	Disable	<a href="#">12-49</a>
Transmit I 2 of 5 Check Digit	44	2Ch	Disable	<a href="#">12-50</a>
Convert I 2 of 5 to EAN 13	82	52h	Disable	<a href="#">12-50</a>
Febraban	1750	F8h 06h D6h	Disable	<a href="#">12-51</a>

1. Parameter number decimal values are used for programming via RSM commands.

2. SSI number hex values are used for programming via SSI commands.

**Table 12-1 Symbology Parameter Defaults (Continued)**

Parameter	Parameter Number <sup>1</sup>	SSI Number <sup>2</sup>	Default	Page Number
I 2 of 5 Security Level	1121	F8h 04h 61h	Security Level 1	<a href="#">12-52</a>
I 2 of 5 Reduced Quiet Zone	1210	F8h 04h BAh	Disable	<a href="#">12-53</a>
<b>Discrete 2 of 5 (DTF)</b>				
Discrete 2 of 5	5	05h	Disable	<a href="#">12-53</a>
Set Lengths for D 2 of 5	20, 21	14h 15h	1 to 55	<a href="#">12-54</a>
<b>Codabar (NW - 7)</b>				
Codabar	7	07h	Enable	<a href="#">12-56</a>
Set Lengths for Codabar	24, 25	18h, 19h	4 to 55	<a href="#">12-56</a>
CLSI Editing	54	36h	Disable	<a href="#">12-58</a>
NOTIS Editing	55	37h	Disable	<a href="#">12-58</a>
Codabar Upper or Lower Case Start/Stop Characters Detection	855	F2h 57h	Upper Case	<a href="#">12-59</a>
<b>MSI</b>				
MSI	11	0Bh	Disable	<a href="#">12-59</a>
Set Lengths for MSI	30, 31	1Eh, 1Fh	4 to 55	<a href="#">12-60</a>
MSI Check Digits	50	32h	One	<a href="#">12-62</a>
Transmit MSI Check Digit	46	2Eh	Disable	<a href="#">12-62</a>
MSI Check Digit Algorithm	51	33h	Mod 10/Mod 10	<a href="#">12-63</a>
MSI Reduced Quiet Zone	1392	F8h 05h 70h	Disable	<a href="#">12-63</a>
<b>Chinese 2 of 5</b>				
Chinese 2 of 5	408	F0h 98h	Disable	<a href="#">12-64</a>
<b>Matrix 2 of 5</b>				
Matrix 2 of 5	618	F1h 6Ah	Disable	<a href="#">12-64</a>
Matrix 2 of 5 Lengths	619 620	F1h 6Bh F1h 6Ch	4 to 55	<a href="#">12-65</a>
Matrix 2 of 5 Check Digit	622	F1h 6Eh	Disable	<a href="#">12-67</a>
Transmit Matrix 2 of 5 Check Digit	623	F1h 6Fh	Disable	<a href="#">12-67</a>

1. Parameter number decimal values are used for programming via RSM commands.

2. SSI number hex values are used for programming via SSI commands.

**Table 12-1 Symbology Parameter Defaults (Continued)**

Parameter	Parameter Number <sup>1</sup>	SSI Number <sup>2</sup>	Default	Page Number
<b>Korean 3 of 5</b>				
Korean 3 of 5	581	F1h 45h	Disable	<a href="#">12-68</a>
<b>Inverse 1D</b>	586	F1h 4Ah	Regular	<a href="#">12-69</a>
<b>GS1 DataBar</b>				
GS1 DataBar Omnidirectional	338	F0h 52h	Enable	<a href="#">12-70</a>
GS1 DataBar Limited	339	F0h 53h	Enable	<a href="#">12-70</a>
GS1 DataBar Expanded	340	F0h 54h	Enable	<a href="#">12-71</a>
Convert GS1 DataBar to UPC/EAN/JAN	397	F0h 8Dh	Disable	<a href="#">12-71</a>
GS1 DataBar Limited Margin Check	728	F1h D8h	Level 3	<a href="#">12-72</a>
GS1 DataBar Security Level	1706	F8h 06h AAh	Level 1	<a href="#">12-73</a>
<b>Symbology-Specific Security Features</b>				
Redundancy Level	78	4Eh	1	<a href="#">12-74</a>
Security Level	77	4Dh	1	<a href="#">12-76</a>
1D Quiet Zone Level	1288	F8h 05h 08h	1	<a href="#">12-77</a>
Intercharacter Gap Size	381	F0h 7Dh	Normal	<a href="#">12-78</a>
<b>Composite Codes</b>				
Composite CC-C	341	F0h 55h	Disable	<a href="#">12-78</a>
Composite CC-A/B	342	F0h 56h	Disable	<a href="#">12-79</a>
Composite TLC-39	371	F0h 73h	Disable	<a href="#">12-79</a>
Composite Inverse	1113	F8h 04h 59h	Regular Only	<a href="#">12-80</a>
UPC Composite Mode	344	F0h 58h	UPC Never Linked	<a href="#">12-81</a>
Composite Beep Mode	398	F0h 8Eh	Beep As Each Code Type is Decoded	<a href="#">12-82</a>
GS1-128 Emulation Mode for UCC/EAN Composite Codes	427	F0h ABh	Disable	<a href="#">12-82</a>
<b>2D Symbologies</b>				
PDF417	15	0Fh	Enable	<a href="#">12-83</a>
MicroPDF417	227	E3h	Disable	<a href="#">12-83</a>
Code 128 Emulation	123	7Bh	Disable	<a href="#">12-84</a>

1. Parameter number decimal values are used for programming via RSM commands.  
 2. SSI number hex values are used for programming via SSI commands.

**Table 12-1 Symbology Parameter Defaults (Continued)**

Parameter	Parameter Number <sup>1</sup>	SSI Number <sup>2</sup>	Default	Page Number
Data Matrix	292	F0h 24h	Enable	<a href="#">12-85</a>
GS1 Data Matrix	1336	F8h 05h 38h	Disable	<a href="#">12-85</a>
Data Matrix Inverse	588	F1h 4Ch	Inverse Autodetect	<a href="#">12-86</a>
Decode Data Matrix Mirror Images	537	F1h 19h	Auto	<a href="#">12-87</a>
Maxicode	294	F0h 26h	Disable	<a href="#">12-88</a>
QR Code	293	F0h 25h	Enable	<a href="#">12-88</a>
GS1 QR	1343	F8h 05h 3Fh	Disable	<a href="#">12-89</a>
MicroQR	573	F1h 3Dh	Enable	<a href="#">12-89</a>
Aztec	574	F1h 3Eh	Enable	<a href="#">12-90</a>
Aztec Inverse	589	F1h 4Dh	Inverse Autodetect	<a href="#">12-91</a>
Han Xin	1167	F8h 04h 8Fh	Disable	<a href="#">12-92</a>
Han Xin Inverse	1168	F8h 04h 90h	Regular	<a href="#">12-92</a>
Grid Matrix	1718	F8 06 B6	Disable	<a href="#">12-93</a>
Grid Matrix Inverse	1719	F8 06 B7	Regular Only	<a href="#">12-93</a>
Grid Matrix Mirror	1736	F8 06 C8	Regular Only	<a href="#">12-94</a>

**Postal Codes**

US Postnet	89	59h	Disable	<a href="#">12-96</a>
US Planet	90	5Ah	Disable	<a href="#">12-96</a>
Transmit US Postal Check Digit	95	5Fh	Enable	<a href="#">12-97</a>
UK Postal	91	5Bh	Disable	<a href="#">12-97</a>
Transmit UK Postal Check Digit	96	60h	Enable	<a href="#">12-98</a>
Japan Postal	290	F0h 22h	Disable	<a href="#">12-98</a>
Australia Post	291	F0h 23h	Disable	<a href="#">12-99</a>
Australia Post Format	718	F1h CEh	Autodiscriminate	<a href="#">12-100</a>
Netherlands KIX Code	326	F0h 46h	Disable	<a href="#">12-101</a>
USPS 4CB/One Code/Intelligent Mail	592	F1h 50h	Disable	<a href="#">12-101</a>
UPU FICS Postal	611	F1h 63h	Disable	<a href="#">12-102</a>
Mailmark	1337	F8h 05h 39h	Disable	<a href="#">12-102</a>

1. Parameter number decimal values are used for programming via RSM commands.

2. SSI number hex values are used for programming via SSI commands.

## Enable/Disable All Code Types

Scan the **Disable All Code Types** bar code to disable all symbologies. This is useful when enabling only a few code types.

Scan **Enable All Code Types** to enable all symbologies. This is useful if you need to disable only a few code types.



**Disable All Code Types**



**Enable All Code Types**

## UPC/EAN/JAN

### UPC-A

#### Parameter # 1

#### SSI # 01h

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable UPC-A.



**\*Enable UPC-A  
(1)**



**Disable UPC-A  
(0)**

**UPC-E****Parameter # 2****SSI # 02h**

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable UPC-E.



\*Enable UPC-E  
(1)



Disable UPC-E  
(0)

**UPC-E1****Parameter # 12****SSI # 0Ch**

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable UPC-E1.



**NOTE** UPC-E1 is not a UCC (Uniform Code Council) approved symbology.



Enable UPC-E1  
(1)



\*Disable UPC-E1  
(0)

## EAN-8/JAN-8

### Parameter # 4

#### SSI # 04h

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable EAN-8/JAN-8.



\*Enable EAN-8/JAN-8  
(1)



Disable EAN-8/JAN-8  
(0)

## EAN-13/JAN-13

### Parameter # 3

#### SSI # 03h

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable EAN-13/JAN-13.



\*Enable EAN-13/JAN-13  
(1)



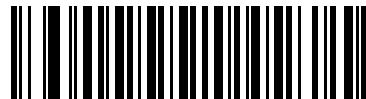
Disable EAN-13/JAN-13  
(0)

**Bookland EAN****Parameter # 83****SSI # 53h**

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable Bookland EAN.



**Enable Bookland EAN**  
(1)



**\*Disable Bookland EAN**  
(0)



**NOTE** If you enable Bookland EAN, select a *Bookland ISBN Format*. Also set *Decode UPC/EAN/JAN Supplements on page 12-13* to either Decode UPC/EAN/JAN with Supplements Only, Autodiscriminate UPC/EAN/JAN With Supplements, or Enable 978/979 Supplemental Mode.

**Bookland ISBN Format****Parameter # 576****SSI # F1h 40h**

If you enabled Bookland EAN using [Bookland EAN on page 12-11](#), select one of the following formats for Bookland data:

- **Bookland ISBN-10** - The scanner reports Bookland data starting with 978 in traditional 10-digit format with the special Bookland check digit for backward-compatibility. Data starting with 979 is not considered Bookland in this mode.
- **Bookland ISBN-13** - The scanner reports Bookland data (starting with either 978 or 979) as EAN-13 in 13-digit format to meet the 2007 ISBN-13 protocol.



\*Bookland ISBN-10  
(0)



Bookland ISBN-13  
(1)



**NOTE** For Bookland EAN to function properly, first enable Bookland EAN using [Bookland EAN on page 12-11](#), and then set [Decode UPC/EAN/JAN Supplements on page 12-13](#) to either Decode UPC/EAN/JAN with Supplements Only, Autodiscriminate UPC/EAN/JAN With Supplements, or Enable 978/979 Supplemental Mode.

**ISSN EAN****Parameter # 617****SSI # F1h 69h**

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable ISSN EAN.



Enable ISSN EAN  
(1)



\*Disable ISSN EAN  
(0)

## Decode UPC/EAN/JAN Supplements

### Parameter # 16

#### SSI # 10h

Supplements are bar codes appended according to specific format conventions (e.g., UPC A+2, UPC E+2, EAN 13+2). The following options are available:

- **Decode UPC/EAN/JAN with Supplements Only** - The scanner only decodes UPC/EAN/JAN symbols with supplemental characters, and ignores symbols without supplements.
- **Ignore UPC/EAN/JAN Supplements** - When presented with a UPC/EAN/JAN plus supplemental symbol, the scanner decodes UPC/EAN/JAN and ignores the supplemental characters.
- **Autodiscriminate UPC/EAN/JAN with Supplements** - The scanner decodes UPC/EAN/JAN symbols with supplemental characters immediately. If the symbol does not have a supplemental, the scanner must decode the bar code the number of times set via [UPC/EAN/JAN Supplemental Redundancy on page 12-16](#) before transmitting its data to confirm that there is no supplemental.

Select one of the following **Supplemental Mode** options to immediately transmit EAN-13 bar codes starting with that prefix that have supplemental characters. If the symbol does not have a supplemental, the scanner must decode the bar code the number of times set via [UPC/EAN/JAN Supplemental Redundancy on page 12-16](#) before transmitting the data to confirm that there is no supplemental. The scanner transmits UPC/EAN/JAN bar codes that do not have that prefix immediately.

- **Enable 378/379 Supplemental Mode**
- **Enable 978/979 Supplemental Mode**

✓ **NOTE** If you select 978/979 Supplemental Mode and are scanning Bookland EAN bar codes, see [Bookland EAN on page 12-11](#) to enable Bookland EAN, and select a format using [Bookland ISBN Format on page 12-12](#).

- **Enable 977 Supplemental Mode**
- **Enable 414/419/434/439 Supplemental Mode**
- **Enable 491 Supplemental Mode**
- **Enable Smart Supplemental Mode** - This applies to EAN-13 bar codes starting with any prefix listed previously.
- **Supplemental User-Programmable Type 1** - This applies to EAN-13 bar codes starting with a 3-digit user-defined prefix. Set this using [User-Programmable Supplements on page 12-16](#).
- **Supplemental User-Programmable Type 1 and 2** - This applies to EAN-13 bar codes starting with either of two 3-digit user-defined prefixes. Set the prefixes using [User-Programmable Supplements on page 12-16](#).
- **Smart Supplemental Plus User-Programmable 1** - This applies to EAN-13 bar codes starting with any prefix listed previously or the prefix set using [User-Programmable Supplements on page 12-16](#).
- **Smart Supplemental Plus User-Programmable 1 and 2** - This applies to EAN-13 bar codes starting with any prefix listed previously or one of the two user-defined prefixes set using [User-Programmable Supplements on page 12-16](#).

✓ **NOTE** To minimize the risk of invalid data transmission, select either to decode or ignore supplemental characters.

## Decode UPC/EAN/JAN Supplementals (continued)



Decode UPC/EAN/JAN With Supplements Only  
(1)



\*Ignore UPC/EAN/JAN Supplementals  
(0)



Autodiscriminate UPC/EAN/JAN with Supplements  
(2)



Enable 378/379 Supplemental Mode  
(4)



Enable 978/979 Supplemental Mode  
(5)



Enable 977 Supplemental Mode  
(7)

## Decode UPC/EAN/JAN Supplementals (continued)



Enable 414/419/434/439 Supplemental Mode  
(6)



Enable 491 Supplemental Mode  
(8)



Enable Smart Supplemental Mode  
(3)



Supplemental User-Programmable Type 1  
(9)



Supplemental User-Programmable Type 1 and 2  
(10)



Smart Supplemental Plus User-Programmable 1  
(11)



Smart Supplemental Plus User-Programmable 1 and 2  
(12)

## User-Programmable Supplements

### Supplemental 1: Parameter # 579

SSI # F1h 43h

### Supplemental 2: Parameter # 580

SSI # F1h 44h

If you selected a Supplemental User-Programmable option from [Decode UPC/EAN/JAN Supplements on page 12-13](#), scan **User-Programmable Supplemental 1**, and then scan three bar codes from [Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes](#) to set the 3-digit prefix. To set a second 3-digit prefix, scan **User-Programmable Supplemental 2**, and then scan three bar codes from [Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes](#). The default is 000 (zeroes).



User-Programmable Supplemental 1



User-Programmable Supplemental 2

## UPC/EAN/JAN Supplemental Redundancy

### Parameter # 80

SSI # 50h

If you selected **Autodiscriminate UPC/EAN/JAN with Supplements**, this option sets the number of times to decode a symbol without supplements before transmission. The range is from two to 30. Five or above is recommended when decoding a mix of UPC/EAN/JAN symbols with and without supplements. The default is 10.

To set a redundancy value, scan the following bar code, and then scan two bar codes from [Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes](#). Enter a leading zero for single digit numbers. To correct an error or change a selection, scan [Cancel on page G-3](#).



UPC/EAN/JAN Supplemental Redundancy

## UPC/EAN/JAN Supplemental AIM ID Format

### Parameter # 672

#### SSI # F1h A0h

If *Transmit Code ID Character on page 5-30* is set to **AIM Code ID Character**, scan one of the following bar codes to select an output format when reporting UPC/EAN/JAN bar codes with supplementals:

- **Separate** - Transmit UPC/EAN/JAN with supplementals with separate AIM IDs but one transmission, i.e.,  
    ]E<0 or 4><data>]E<1 or 2>[supplemental data]
- **Combined** – Transmit UPC/EAN/JAN with supplementals with one AIM ID and one transmission, i.e.,  
    ]E3<data+supplemental data>
- **Separate Transmissions** - Transmit UPC/EAN/JAN with supplementals with separate AIM IDs and separate transmissions, i.e.,  
    ]E<0 or 4><data>  
    ]E<1 or 2>[supplemental data]



Separate  
(0)



\*Combined  
(1)



Separate Transmissions  
(2)

## Transmit UPC-A Check Digit

### Parameter # 40

#### SSI # 28h

The check digit is the last character of the symbol used to verify the integrity of the data. Scan one of the following bar codes to transmit the bar code data with or without the UPC-A check digit. It is always verified to guarantee the integrity of the data.



\*Transmit UPC-A Check Digit  
(1)



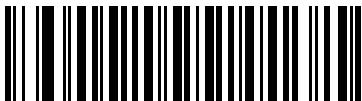
Do Not Transmit UPC-A Check Digit  
(0)

## Transmit UPC-E Check Digit

### Parameter # 41

#### SSI # 29h

The check digit is the last character of the symbol used to verify the integrity of the data. Scan one of the following bar codes to transmit the bar code data with or without the UPC-E check digit. It is always verified to guarantee the integrity of the data.



\*Transmit UPC-E Check Digit  
(1)



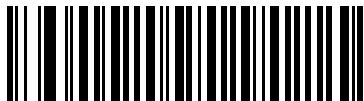
Do Not Transmit UPC-E Check Digit  
(0)

## **Transmit UPC-E1 Check Digit**

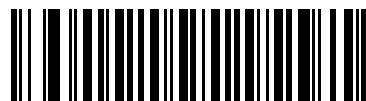
## Parameter # 42

SSI # 2Ah

The check digit is the last character of the symbol used to verify the integrity of the data. Scan one of the following bar codes to transmit the bar code data with or without the UPC-E1 check digit. It is always verified to guarantee the integrity of the data.



**\*Transmit UPC-E1 Check Digit  
(1)**



## **Do Not Transmit UPC-E1 Check Digit (0)**

## UPC-A Preamble

### Parameter # 34

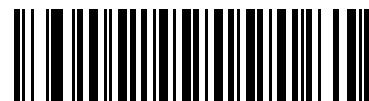
#### SSI # 22h

Preamble characters are part of the UPC symbol, and include Country Code and System Character. Select the appropriate option for transmitting a UPC-A preamble to match the host system:

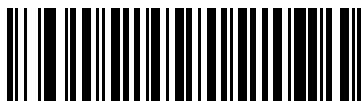
- Transmit System Character only
- Transmit System Character and Country Code ("0" for USA)
- Transmit no preamble.



No Preamble (<DATA>  
(0)



\*System Character  
(<SYSTEM CHARACTER> <DATA>)  
(1)



System Character & Country Code  
(< COUNTRY CODE> <SYSTEM CHARACTER> <DATA>)  
(2)

## UPC-E Preamble

### Parameter # 35

#### SSI # 23h

Preamble characters are part of the UPC symbol, and include Country Code and System Character. Select the appropriate option for transmitting a UPC-E preamble to match the host system:

- Transmit System Character only
- Transmit System Character and Country Code ("0" for USA)
- Transmit no preamble.



No Preamble (<DATA>  
(0)



\*System Character  
(<SYSTEM CHARACTER> <DATA>)  
(1)



System Character & Country Code  
(< COUNTRY CODE> <SYSTEM CHARACTER> <DATA>)  
(2)

## UPC-E1 Preamble

### Parameter # 36

#### SSI # 24h

Preamble characters are part of the UPC symbol, and include Country Code and System Character. Select the appropriate option for transmitting a UPC-E1 preamble to match the host system:

- Transmit System Character only
- Transmit System Character and Country Code ("0" for USA)
- Transmit no preamble.



No Preamble (<DATA>  
(0)



\*System Character  
(<SYSTEM CHARACTER> <DATA>)  
(1)



System Character & Country Code  
(< COUNTRY CODE> <SYSTEM CHARACTER> <DATA>)  
(2)

## Convert UPC-E to UPC-A

### Parameter # 37

#### SSI # 25h

Enable this to convert UPC-E (zero suppressed) decoded data to UPC-A format before transmission. After conversion, the data follows UPC-A format and is affected by UPC-A programming selections (e.g., Preamble, Check Digit).

Disable this to transmit UPC-E decoded data as UPC-E data, without conversion.



Convert UPC-E to UPC-A (Enable)  
(1)



\*Do Not Convert UPC-E to UPC-A (Disable)  
(0)

## Convert UPC-E1 to UPC-A

### Parameter # 38

#### SSI # 26h

Scan **Convert UPC-E1 to UPC-A (Enable)** to convert UPC-E1 decoded data to UPC-A format before transmission. After conversion, the data follows UPC-A format and is affected by UPC-A programming selections (e.g., Preamble, Check Digit).

Scan **Do Not Convert UPC-E1 to UPC-A (Disable)** to transmit UPC-E1 decoded data as UPC-E1 data, without conversion.



Convert UPC-E1 to UPC-A (Enable)  
(1)



\*Do Not Convert UPC-E1 to UPC-A (Disable)  
(0)

## EAN/JAN Zero Extend

### Parameter # 39

#### SSI # 27h

Scan **Enable EAN/JAN Zero Extend** to add five leading zeros to decoded EAN-8 symbols to make them compatible in length to EAN-13 symbols. Scan **Disable EAN/JAN Zero Extend** to transmit EAN-8 symbols as is.



Enable EAN/JAN Zero Extend  
(1)



\*Disable EAN/JAN Zero Extend  
(0)

## UCC Coupon Extended Code

### Parameter # 85

#### SSI # 55h

Scan **Enable UCC Coupon Extended Code** to decode UPC-A bar codes starting with digit '5', EAN-13 bar codes starting with digit '99', and UPC-A/GS1-128 coupon codes. UPC-A, EAN-13, and GS1-128 must be enabled to use this feature.



Enable UCC Coupon Extended Code  
(1)



\*Disable UCC Coupon Extended Code  
(0)



**NOTE** See [UPC/EAN/JAN Supplemental Redundancy on page 12-16](#) to control autodiscrimination of the GS1-128 portion (right half) of a coupon code.

**Coupon Report****Parameter # 730****SSI # F1h DAh**

Scan one of the following bar codes to select the type of coupon format to support.

- **Old Coupon Format** - Support UPC-A/GS1-128 and EAN-13/GS1-128.
- **New Coupon Format** - An interim format to support UPC-A/GS1-DataBar and EAN-13/GS1-DataBar.
- **Autodiscriminate Format** - Support both **Old Coupon Format** and **New Coupon Format**.



**Old Coupon Format**  
(0)



**\*New Coupon Format**  
(1)



**Autodiscriminate Coupon Format**  
(2)

**UPC Reduced Quiet Zone****Parameter # 1289****SSI # F8h 05h 09h**

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable decoding UPC bar codes with reduced quiet zones (the margins on either side of the bar code). If you select **Enable**, select a [1D Quiet Zone Level on page 12-77](#).



**Enable UPC Reduced Quiet Zone**  
(1)



**\*Disable UPC Reduced Quiet Zone**  
(0)

## Code 128

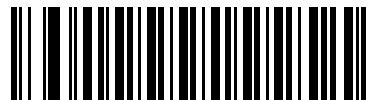
### Parameter # 8

#### SSI # 08h

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable Code 128.



**\*Enable Code 128**  
(1)



**Disable Code 128**  
(0)

## Set Lengths for Code 128

### L1 = Parameter # 209

#### SSI # D1h

### L2 = Parameter # 210

#### SSI # D2h

- ✓ **NOTE** The maximum number of 1D bar code characters readable with scanner depends on the type of symbology, type of characters (i.e., digits or letters), printing density, and quality. For reference, the DS2208 reads 3.1 in wide, 10mil 1D bar codes printed with 1200dpi resolution and 80% contrast.

The length of a code refers to the number of characters (i.e., human readable characters), including check digit(s) the code contains. Set lengths for Code 128 to any length, one or two discrete lengths, or lengths within a specific range. Minimum and maximum length range is from 0 - 80. The default minimum and maximum length range is from 1 - 55.

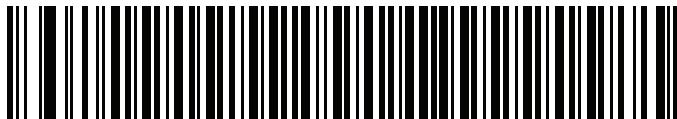
- ✓ **NOTE** When setting lengths, enter a leading zero for single digit numbers.

Scan one of the following bar codes to select a length option:

- **One Discrete Length** - Decode only Code 128 symbols containing a selected length. Select the length using the bar codes in [Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes](#). For example, to decode only Code 128 symbols with 14 characters, scan **Code 128 - One Discrete Length**, and then scan **1, 4**. To correct an error or change the selection, scan [Cancel on page G-3](#).
- **Two Discrete Lengths** - Decode only Code 128 symbols containing either of two lengths. Select lengths using the bar codes in [Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes](#). For example, to decode only Code 128 symbols containing either 2 or 14 characters, scan **Code 128 - Two Discrete Lengths**, and then scan **0, 2, 1, 4**. To correct an error or change the selection, scan [Cancel on page G-3](#).
- **Length Within Range** - Decode Code 128 symbols with a specific length range. Select lengths using the bar codes in [Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes](#). For example, to decode Code 128 symbols containing between 4 and 12 characters, scan **Code 128 - Length Within Range**, and then scan **0, 4, 1, 2**. To correct an error or change the selection, scan [Cancel on page G-3](#).

## Set Lengths for Code 128 (continued)

- **Any Length** - Decode Code 128 symbols containing any number of characters within the scanner's capability.



Code 128 - One Discrete Length



Code 128 - Two Discrete Lengths



\*Code 128 - Length Within Range  
(Default: 1 - 55)



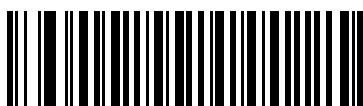
Code 128 - Any Length

## GS1-128 (formerly UCC/EAN-128)

Parameter # 14

SSI # 0Eh

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable GS1-128.



\*Enable GS1-128  
(1)



Disable GS1-128  
(0)

## ISBT 128

### Parameter # 84

#### SSI # 54h

ISBT 128 is a variant of Code 128 used in the blood bank industry. Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable ISBT 128.



**Enable ISBT 128**  
(1)



**\*Disable ISBT 128**  
(0)

## ISBT Concatenation

### Parameter # 577

#### SSI # F1h 41h

Select an option for concatenating pairs of ISBT code types:

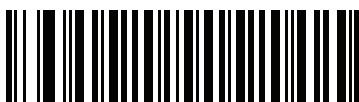
- **Enable ISBT Concatenation** - There must be two ISBT codes in order for the scanner to decode and perform concatenation. The scanner does not decode single ISBT symbols.
- **Disable ISBT Concatenation** - The scanner does not concatenate pairs of ISBT codes it encounters.
- **Autodiscriminate ISBT Concatenation** - The scanner decodes and concatenates pairs of ISBT codes immediately. If only a single ISBT symbol is present, the scanner must decode the symbol the number of times set via *ISBT Concatenation Redundancy on page 12-30* before transmitting its data to confirm that there is no additional ISBT symbol.



Enable ISBT Concatenation  
(1)



\*Disable ISBT Concatenation  
(0)



Autodiscriminate ISBT Concatenation  
(2)

## Check ISBT Table

### Parameter # 578

#### SSI # F1h 42h

The ISBT specification includes a table that lists several types of ISBT bar codes that are commonly used in pairs. If you set **ISBT Concatenation** to **Enable**, enable **Check ISBT Table** to concatenate only those pairs found in this table. Other types of ISBT codes are not concatenated.



\*Enable Check ISBT Table  
(1)



Disable Check ISBT Table  
(0)

## ISBT Concatenation Redundancy

### Parameter # 223

#### SSI # DFh

If [ISBT Concatenation on page 12-29](#) is set to **Autodiscriminate ISBT Concatenation** (default), you can set the number of times the scanner must decode an ISBT symbol before determining that there is no additional symbol. To do so, scan **ISBT Concatenation Redundancy** below and then scan bar codes in [Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes](#) to set a value between 2 and 20. Enter a leading zero for single digit numbers. To correct an error or change a selection, scan [Cancel on page G-3](#). The default is 10.



ISBT Concatenation Redundancy

**Code 128 <FNC4>****Parameter # 1254****SSI # F8h 04h E6h**

This feature applies to Code 128 bar codes with an embedded <FNC4> character. Select **Ignore Code 128 <FNC4>** to strip the <FNC4> character from the decode data. The remaining characters are sent to the host unchanged. When disabled, the <FNC4> character is processed normally as per Code 128 standard.



\*Honor Code 128 <FNC4>  
(0)



Ignore Code 128 <FNC4>  
(1)

**Code 128 Security Level****Parameter # 751****SSI # F1h EFh**

Code 128 bar codes are vulnerable to misdecodes, particularly when Code 128 Lengths is set to **Any Length**. The scanner offers four levels of decode security for Code 128 bar codes. There is an inverse relationship between security and scanner aggressiveness. Increasing the level of security can reduce scanning aggressiveness, so select only the level of security necessary.

- **Code 128 Security Level 0** - The scanner operates in its most aggressive state, while providing sufficient security in decoding most in-spec bar codes.
- **Code 128 Security Level 1** - This option eliminates most misdecodes while maintaining reasonable aggressiveness.
- **Code 128 Security Level 2** - This option applies greater bar code security requirements if **Security Level 1** fails to eliminate misdecodes.
- **Code 128 Security Level 3** - If you selected **Security Level 2**, and misdecodes still occur, select this security level to apply the highest safety requirements.

 **NOTE** Selecting this option is an extreme measure against mis-decoding severely out-of-spec bar codes, and significantly impairs the decoding ability of the scanner. If this level of security is required, try to improve the quality of the bar codes.

## Code 128 Security Level (continued)



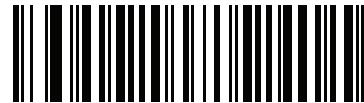
Code 128 Security Level 0  
(0)



\*Code 128 Security Level 1  
(1)



Code 128 Security Level 2  
(2)



Code 128 Security Level 3  
(3)

## Code 128 Reduced Quiet Zone

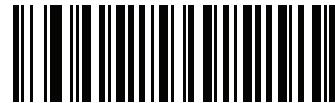
### Parameter # 1208

### SSI # F8h 04h B8h

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable decoding Code 128 bar codes with reduced quiet zones (the margins on either side of the bar code). If you select **Enable**, select a [1D Quiet Zone Level on page 12-77](#).



Enable Code 128 Reduced Quiet Zone  
(1)



\*Disable Code 128 Reduced Quiet Zone  
(0)

---

## Code 39

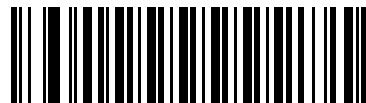
### Parameter # 0

#### SSI # 00h

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable Code 39.



\*Enable Code 39  
(1)



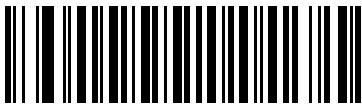
Disable Code 39  
(0)

## Trioptic Code 39

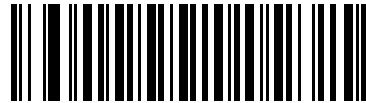
### Parameter # 13

#### SSI # 0Dh

Trioptic Code 39 is a variant of Code 39 used in the marking of computer tape cartridges. Trioptic Code 39 symbols always contain six characters. Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable Trioptic Code 39.



Enable Trioptic Code 39  
(1)



\*Disable Trioptic Code 39  
(0)



**NOTE** You cannot enable Trioptic Code 39 and Code 39 Full ASCII simultaneously.

## Convert Code 39 to Code 32

### Parameter # 86

#### SSI # 56h

Code 32 is a variant of Code 39 used by the Italian pharmaceutical industry. Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable converting Code 39 to Code 32.



**NOTE** Code 39 must be enabled for this parameter to function.



**Enable Convert Code 39 to Code 32**  
(1)



**\*Disable Convert Code 39 to Code 32**  
(0)

## Code 32 Prefix

### Parameter # 231

#### SSI # E7h

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable adding the prefix character "A" to all Code 32 bar codes.



**NOTE** Convert Code 39 to Code 32 must be enabled for this parameter to function.



**Enable Code 32 Prefix**  
(1)



**\*Disable Code 32 Prefix**  
(0)

## Set Lengths for Code 39

**L1 = Parameter # 18**

**SSI # 12h**

**L2 = Parameter # 19**

**SSI # 13h**

- ✓ **NOTE** The maximum number of 1D bar code characters readable with scanner depends on the type of symbology, type of characters (i.e., digits or letters), printing density, and quality. For reference, the DS2208 reads 3.1 in wide, 10mil 1D bar codes printed with 1200dpi resolution and 80% contrast.

The length of a code refers to the number of characters (i.e., human readable characters), including check digit(s) the code contains. Set lengths for Code 39 to any length, one or two discrete lengths, or lengths within a specific range. If Code 39 Full ASCII is enabled, **Length Within Range** or **Any Length** are the preferred options. Minimum and maximum length range is from 0 - 80. The default minimum and maximum length range is from 1 - 55.

- ✓ **NOTE** When setting lengths, enter a leading zero for single digit numbers.

Scan one of the following bar codes to select a length option:

- **One Discrete Length** - Decode only Code 39 symbols containing a selected length. Select the length using the bar codes in [Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes](#). For example, to decode only Code 39 symbols with 14 characters, scan **Code 39 - One Discrete Length**, and then scan **1, 4**. To correct an error or change the selection, scan [Cancel on page G-3](#).
- **Two Discrete Lengths** - Decode only Code 39 symbols containing either of two lengths. Select lengths using the bar codes in [Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes](#). For example, to decode only Code 39 symbols containing either 2 or 14 characters, scan **Code 39 - Two Discrete Lengths**, and then scan **0, 2, 1, 4**. To correct an error or change the selection, scan [Cancel on page G-3](#).
- **Length Within Range** - Decode Code 39 symbols with a specific length range. Select lengths using the bar codes in [Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes](#). For example, to decode Code 39 symbols containing between 4 and 12 characters, scan **Code 39 - Length Within Range**, and then scan **0, 4, 1, 2**. To correct an error or change the selection, scan [Cancel on page G-3](#).
- **Any Length** - Decode Code 39 symbols containing any number of characters within the scanner's capability.

## Set Lengths for Code 39 (continued)



Code 39 - One Discrete Length



Code 39 - Two Discrete Lengths



\*Code 39 - Length Within Range  
(Default: 1 - 55)



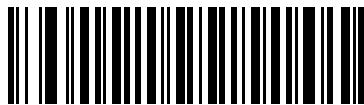
Code 39 - Any Length

## Code 39 Check Digit Verification

### Parameter # 48

### SSI # 30h

Scan **Enable Code 39 Check Digit** to check the integrity of all Code 39 symbols to verify that the data complies with specified check digit algorithm. Only Code 39 symbols which include a modulo 43 check digit are decoded. Enable this feature if the Code 39 symbols contain a Modulo 43 check digit.



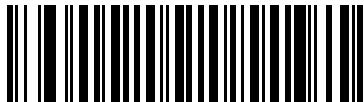
Enable Code 39 Check Digit  
(1)



\*Disable Code 39 Check Digit  
(0)

**Transmit Code 39 Check Digit****Parameter # 43****SSI # 2Bh**

Scan one of the following bar codes to transmit Code 39 data with or without the check digit.



**Transmit Code 39 Check Digit (Enable)**  
(1)



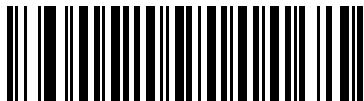
**\*Do Not Transmit Code 39 Check Digit (Disable)**  
(0)



**NOTE** *Code 39 Check Digit Verification* must be enabled for this parameter to function.

**Code 39 Full ASCII Conversion****Parameter # 17****SSI # 11h**

Code 39 Full ASCII is a variant of Code 39 which pairs characters to encode the full ASCII character set. Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable Code 39 Full ASCII.



**Enable Code 39 Full ASCII**  
(1)



**\*Disable Code 39 Full ASCII**  
(0)



**NOTE** You cannot enable Trioptic Code 39 and Code 39 Full ASCII simultaneously.

Code 39 Full ASCII to Full ASCII Correlation is host-dependent, and is therefore described in the ASCII character set table for the appropriate interface. See *Table I-1 on page I-1*.

## Code 39 Security Level

### Parameter # 750

#### SSI # F1h EEh

The scanner offers four levels of decode security for Code 39 bar codes. There is an inverse relationship between security and scanner aggressiveness. Increasing the level of security can reduce scanning aggressiveness, so select only the level of security necessary.

- **Code 39 Security Level 0:** The scanner operates in its most aggressive state, while providing sufficient security in decoding most in-spec bar codes.
- **Code 39 Security Level 1:** This default setting eliminates most misdecodes.
- **Code 39 Security Level 2:** This option applies greater bar code security requirements if **Security Level 1** fails to eliminate misdecodes.
- **Code 39 Level 3:** If you selected **Security Level 2**, and misdecodes still occur, select this security level to apply the highest safety requirements.

✓ **NOTE** Selecting this option is an extreme measure against mis-decoding severely out-of-spec bar codes, and significantly impairs the decoding ability of the scanner. If this level of security is required, try to improve the quality of the bar codes.

## Code 39 Security Level (continued)



Code 39 Security Level 0  
(0)



\*Code 39 Security Level 1  
(1)



Code 39 Security Level 2  
(2)



Code 39 Security Level 3  
(3)

## Code 39 Reduced Quiet Zone

### Parameter # 1209

#### SSI # F8h 04h B9h

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable decoding Code 39 bar codes with reduced quiet zones (the margins on either side of the bar code). If you select **Enable**, select a [1D Quiet Zone Level on page 12-77](#).



Enable Code 39 Reduced Quiet Zone  
(1)



\*Disable Code 39 Reduced Quiet Zone  
(0)

---

## Code 93

### Parameter # 9

#### SSI # 09h

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable Code 93.



\*Enable Code 93  
(1)



Disable Code 93  
(0)

## Code 93 (continued)

### Set Lengths for Code 93

**L1 = Parameter # 26**

**SSI # 1Ah**

**L2 = Parameter # 27**

**SSI # 1Bh**

- ✓ **NOTE** The maximum number of 1D bar code characters readable with scanner depends on the type of symbology, type of characters (i.e., digits or letters), printing density, and quality. For reference, the DS2208 reads 3.1 in wide, 10mil 1D bar codes printed with 1200dpi resolution and 80% contrast.

The length of a code refers to the number of characters (i.e., human readable characters), including check digit(s) the code contains. Set lengths for Code 93 to any length, one or two discrete lengths, or lengths within a specific range. Minimum and maximum length range is from 0 - 55. The default minimum and maximum length range is from 1 - 55.

- ✓ **NOTE** When setting lengths, enter a leading zero for single digit numbers.

Scan one of the following bar codes to select a length option:

- **One Discrete Length** - Decode only Code 93 symbols containing a selected length. Select the length using the bar codes in [Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes](#). For example, to decode only Code 93 symbols with 14 characters, scan **Code 93 - One Discrete Length**, and then scan **1, 4**. To correct an error or change the selection, scan [Cancel on page G-3](#).
- **Two Discrete Lengths** - Decode only Code 93 symbols containing either of two lengths. Select lengths using the bar codes in [Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes](#). For example, to decode only Code 93 symbols containing either 2 or 14 characters, scan **Code 93 - Two Discrete Lengths**, and then scan **0, 2, 1, 4**. To correct an error or change the selection, scan [Cancel on page G-3](#).
- **Length Within Range** - Decode Code 93 symbols with a specific length range. Select lengths using the bar codes in [Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes](#). For example, to decode Code 93 symbols containing between 4 and 12 characters, scan **Code 93 - Length Within Range**, and then scan **0, 4, 1, 2**. To correct an error or change the selection, scan [Cancel on page G-3](#).
- **Any Length** - Decode Code 93 symbols containing any number of characters within the scanner's capability.

## Set Lengths for Code 93 (continued)



Code 93 - One Discrete Length



Code 93 - Two Discrete Lengths



\*Code 93 - Length Within Range  
(Default: 1 - 55)



Code 93 - Any Length

## Code 11

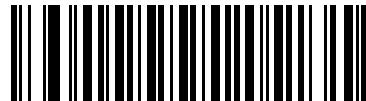
### Parameter # 10

#### SSI # 0Ah

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable Code 11



**Enable Code 11**  
(1)



**\*Disable Code 11**  
(0)

### Set Lengths for Code 11

#### L1 = Parameter # 28

#### SSI # 1Ch

#### L2 = Parameter # 29

#### SSI # 1Dh

- ✓ **NOTE** The maximum number of 1D bar code characters readable with scanner depends on the type of symbology, type of characters (i.e., digits or letters), printing density, and quality. For reference, the DS2208 reads 3.1 in wide, 10mil 1D bar codes printed with 1200dpi resolution and 80% contrast.

The length of a code refers to the number of characters (i.e., human readable characters), including check digit(s) the code contains. Set lengths for Code 11 to any length, one or two discrete lengths, or lengths within a specific range. Minimum and maximum length range is from 0 - 55. The default minimum and maximum length range is from 4 - 55.

- ✓ **NOTE** When setting lengths, enter a leading zero for single digit numbers.

Scan one of the following bar codes to select a length option:

- **One Discrete Length** - Decode only Code 11 symbols containing a selected length. Select the length using the bar codes in [Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes](#). For example, to decode only Code 11 symbols with 14 characters, scan **Code 11 - One Discrete Length**, and then scan **1, 4**. To correct an error or change the selection, scan [Cancel on page G-3](#).

## Set Lengths for Code 11 (continued)

- **Two Discrete Lengths** - Decode only Code 11 symbols containing either of two lengths. Select lengths using the bar codes in [Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes](#). For example, to decode only Code 11 symbols containing either 2 or 14 characters, scan **Code 11 - Two Discrete Lengths**, and then scan **0, 2, 1, 4**. To correct an error or change the selection, scan [Cancel on page G-3](#).
- **Length Within Range** - Decode Code 11 symbols with a specific length range. Select lengths using the bar codes in [Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes](#). For example, to decode Code 11 symbols containing between 4 and 12 characters, scan **Code 11 - Length Within Range**, and then scan **0, 4, 1, 2**. To correct an error or change the selection, scan [Cancel on page G-3](#).
- **Any Length** - Decode Code 11 symbols containing any number of characters within the scanner's capability.



Code 11 - One Discrete Length



Code 11 - Two Discrete Lengths



\*Code 11 - Length Within Range  
(Default: 4 - 55)



Code 11 - Any Length

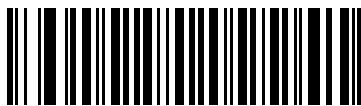
## Code 11 Check Digit Verification

### Parameter # 52

#### SSI # 34h

This feature allows the scanner to check the integrity of all Code 11 symbols to verify that the data complies with the specified check digit algorithm.

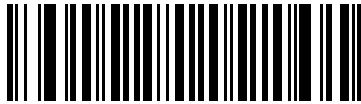
Scan one of the following bar codes to specify the number of check digits encoded in the Code 11 symbols, or to disable this feature.



\*Disable  
(0)



One Check Digit  
(1)



Two Check Digits  
(2)

## Transmit Code 11 Check Digits

### Parameter # 47

#### SSI # 2Fh

Scan one of the following bar codes to select whether or not to transmit the Code 11 check digit(s).



Transmit Code 11 Check Digit(s) (Enable)  
(1)



\*Do Not Transmit Code 11 Check Digit(s) (Disable)  
(0)



*NOTE* *Code 11 Check Digit Verification* must be enabled for this parameter to function.

---

## Interleaved 2 of 5 (ITF)

### Parameter # 6

#### SSI # 06h

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable Interleaved 2 of 5.



\*Enable Interleaved 2 of 5  
(1)



Disable Interleaved 2 of 5  
(0)

## Set Lengths for Interleaved 2 of 5

**L1 = Parameter # 22**

**SSI # 16h**

**L2 = Parameter # 23**

**SSI # 17h**

- ✓ **NOTE** The maximum number of 1D bar code characters readable with scanner depends on the type of symbology, type of characters (i.e., digits or letters), printing density, and quality. For reference, the DS2208 reads 3.1 in wide, 10mil 1D bar codes printed with 1200dpi resolution and 80% contrast.

The length of a code refers to the number of characters (i.e., human readable characters), including check digit(s) the code contains. Set lengths for I 2 of 5 to any length, one or two discrete lengths, or lengths within a specific range. Minimum and maximum length range is from 0 - 55. The default minimum and maximum length range is from 6 - 55.

- ✓ **NOTE** When setting lengths, enter a leading zero for single digit numbers.

Scan one of the following bar codes to select a length option:

- **One Discrete Length** - Decode only I 2 of 5 symbols containing a selected length. Select the length using the bar codes in [Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes](#). For example, to decode only I 2 of 5 symbols with 14 characters, scan **I 2 of 5 - One Discrete Length**, and then scan **1, 4**. To correct an error or change the selection, scan [Cancel on page G-3](#).
- **Two Discrete Lengths** - Decode only I 2 of 5 symbols containing either of two lengths. Select lengths using the bar codes in [Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes](#). For example, to decode only I 2 of 5 symbols containing either 2 or 14 characters, scan **I 2 of 5 - Two Discrete Lengths**, and then scan **0, 2, 1, 4**. To correct an error or change the selection, scan [Cancel on page G-3](#).
- **Length Within Range** - Decode I 2 of 5 symbols with a specific length range. Select lengths using the bar codes in [Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes](#). For example, to decode I 2 of 5 symbols containing between 4 and 12 characters, scan **I 2 of 5 - Length Within Range**, and then scan **0, 4, 1, 2**. To correct an error or change the selection, scan [Cancel on page G-3](#).

## Set Lengths for Interleaved 2 of 5 (continued)

- **Any Length** - Decode I 2 of 5 symbols containing any number of characters within the scanner's capability.

✓ **NOTE** Due to the construction of the I 2 of 5 symbology, it is possible for a scan line covering only a portion of the code to transmit as a complete scan, yielding less data than is encoded in the bar code. To prevent this, select specific lengths (I 2 of 5 - One Discrete Length, Two Discrete Lengths) for I 2 of 5 applications, or increase the [I 2 of 5 Security Level on page 12-52](#).



I 2 of 5 - One Discrete Length



I 2 of 5 - Two Discrete Lengths



\*I 2 of 5 - Length Within Range  
(Default: 6 - 55)



I 2 of 5 - Any Length

## I 2 of 5 Check Digit Verification

### Parameter # 49

#### SSI # 31h

Scan one of the following bar codes to check the integrity of all I 2 of 5 symbols to verify the data complies with either the specified Uniform Symbology Specification (USS), or the Optical Product Code Council (OPCC) check digit algorithm.



\*Disable  
(0)



USS Check Digit  
(1)



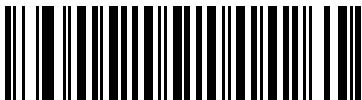
OPCC Check Digit  
(2)

## Transmit I 2 of 5 Check Digit

### Parameter # 44

#### SSI # 2Ch

Scan one of the following bar codes to transmit I 2 of 5 data with or without the check digit.



**Transmit I 2 of 5 Check Digit (Enable)**  
(1)



**\*Do Not Transmit I 2 of 5 Check Digit (Disable)**  
(0)

## Convert I 2 of 5 to EAN-13

### Parameter # 82

#### SSI # 52h

Scan **Convert I 2 of 5 to EAN-13 (Enable)** to convert 14-character I 2 of 5 codes to EAN-13, and transmit to the host as EAN-13. To accomplish this, the I 2 of 5 code must be enabled, and the code must have a leading zero and a valid EAN-13 check digit.



**Convert I 2 of 5 to EAN-13 (Enable)**  
(1)



**\*Do Not Convert I 2 of 5 to EAN-13 (Disable)**  
(0)

## Febraban

### Parameter # 1750

#### SSI # F8h 06h D6h

Febraban is an I 2 of 5 barcode of length 44 that requires special check characters to be inserted in the transmitted data stream. When enabled, the I 2 of 5 internal check digit calculation and transmission is disabled. When disabled, all I 2 of 5 functionality works as usual.

#### ***Recommendations for Length Setting***

I 2 of 5 Length 1: Larger of the fixed length and the FEBRABAN length (==44).

I 2 of 5 Length 2: Smaller of the fixed length and the FEBRABAN length (==44).



**Enable Febraban**  
(1)



**\*Disable Febraban**  
(0)

**I 2 of 5 Security Level****Parameter # 1121****SSI # F8h 04h 61h**

Interleaved 2 of 5 bar codes are vulnerable to misdecodes, particularly when I 2 of 5 Lengths is set to **Any Length**. The scanner offers four levels of decode security for Interleaved 2 of 5 bar codes. There is an inverse relationship between security and scanner aggressiveness. Increasing the level of security can reduce scanning aggressiveness, so select only the level of security necessary.

- **I 2 of 5 Security Level 0:** The scanner operates in its most aggressive state, while providing sufficient security in decoding most in-spec bar codes.
- **I 2 of 5 Security Level 1:** A bar code must be successfully read twice, and satisfy certain safety requirements before being decoded. This default setting eliminates most misdecodes.
- **I 2 of 5 Security Level 2:** This option applies greater bar code security requirements if **Security Level 1** fails to eliminate misdecodes.
- **I 2 of 5 Security Level 3:** If you selected **Security Level 2**, and misdecodes still occur, select this security level. The highest safety requirements are applied. A bar code must be successfully read three times before being decoded.



**NOTE** Selecting this option is an extreme measure against mis-decoding severely out-of-spec bar codes, and significantly impairs the decoding ability of the scanner. If this level of security is required, try to improve the quality of the bar codes.



**I 2 of 5 Security Level 0  
(0)**



**\*I 2 of 5 Security Level 1  
(1)**



**I 2 of 5 Security Level 2  
(2)**



**I 2 of 5 Security Level 3  
(3)**

## I 2 of 5 Reduced Quiet Zone

### Parameter # 1210

#### SSI # F8h 04h BAh

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable decoding I 2 of 5 bar codes with reduced quiet zones (the margins on either side of the bar code). If you select **Enable**, select a *1D Quiet Zone Level* on page 12-77.



Enable I 2 of 5 Reduced Quiet Zone  
(1)



\*Disable I 2 of 5 Reduced Quiet Zone  
(0)

---

## Discrete 2 of 5 (DTF)

### Parameter # 5

#### SSI # 05h

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable Discrete 2 of 5.



Enable Discrete 2 of 5  
(1)



\*Disable Discrete 2 of 5  
(0)

## Set Lengths for Discrete 2 of 5

**L1 = Parameter # 20**

**SSI # 14h**

**L2 = Parameter # 21**

**SSI # 15h**

- ✓ **NOTE** The maximum number of 1D bar code characters readable with scanner depends on the type of symbology, type of characters (i.e., digits or letters), printing density, and quality. For reference, the DS2208 reads 3.1 in wide, 10mil 1D bar codes printed with 1200dpi resolution and 80% contrast.

The length of a code refers to the number of characters (i.e., human readable characters), including check digit(s) the code contains. Set lengths for D 2 of 5 to any length, one or two discrete lengths, or lengths within a specific range. Minimum and maximum length range is from 0 - 55. The default minimum and maximum length range is from 1 - 55.

- ✓ **NOTE** When setting lengths, enter a leading zero for single digit numbers.

Scan one of the following bar codes to select a length option:

- **One Discrete Length** - Decode only D 2 of 5 symbols containing a selected length. Select the length using the bar codes in [Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes](#). For example, to decode only D 2 of 5 symbols with 14 characters, scan **D 2 of 5 - One Discrete Length**, and then scan **1, 4**. To correct an error or change the selection, scan [Cancel on page G-3](#).
- **Two Discrete Lengths** - Decode only D 2 of 5 symbols containing either of two lengths. Select lengths using the bar codes in [Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes](#). For example, to decode only D 2 of 5 symbols containing either 2 or 14 characters, scan **D 2 of 5 - Two Discrete Lengths**, and then scan **0, 2, 1, 4**. To correct an error or change the selection, scan [Cancel on page G-3](#).
- **Length Within Range** - Decode D 2 of 5 symbols with a specific length range. Select lengths using the bar codes in [Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes](#). For example, to decode D 2 of 5 symbols containing between 4 and 12 characters, scan **D 2 of 5 - Length Within Range**, and then scan **0, 4, 1, 2**. To correct an error or change the selection, scan [Cancel on page G-3](#).

## Set Lengths for Discrete 2 of 5 (continued)

- **Any Length** - Decode D 2 of 5 symbols containing any number of characters within the scanner's capability.

✓ **NOTE** Due to the construction of the D 2 of 5 symbology, it is possible for a scan line covering only a portion of the code to transmit as a complete scan, yielding less data than is encoded in the bar code. To prevent this, select specific lengths (D 2 of 5 - One Discrete Length, Two Discrete Lengths) for D 2 of 5 applications.



D 2 of 5 - One Discrete Length



D 2 of 5 - Two Discrete Lengths



\*D 2 of 5 - Length Within Range  
(Default: 1 - 55)



D 2 of 5 - Any Length

## Codabar (NW - 7)

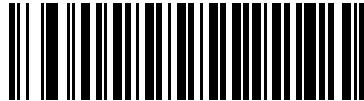
### Parameter # 7

#### SSI # 07h

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable Codabar.



\*Enable Codabar  
(1)



Disable Codabar  
(0)

### Set Lengths for Codabar

#### L1 = Parameter # 24

#### SSI # 18h

#### L2 = Parameter # 25

#### SSI # 19h

- ✓ **NOTE** The maximum number of 1D bar code characters readable with scanner depends on the type of symbology, type of characters (i.e., digits or letters), printing density, and quality. For reference, the DS2208 reads 3.1 in wide, 10mil 1D bar codes printed with 1200dpi resolution and 80% contrast.

The length of a code refers to the number of characters (i.e., human readable characters), including check digit(s) the code contains. Set lengths for Codabar to any length, one or two discrete lengths, or lengths within a specific range. Minimum and maximum length range is from 0 - 55. The default minimum and maximum length range is from 4 - 55.

- ✓ **NOTE** When setting lengths, enter a leading zero for single digit numbers.

## Set Lengths for Codabar (continued)

Scan one of the following bar codes to select a length option:

- **One Discrete Length** - Decode only Codabar symbols containing a selected length. Select the length using the bar codes in [Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes](#). For example, to decode only Codabar symbols with 14 characters, scan **Codabar - One Discrete Length**, and then scan **1, 4**. To correct an error or change the selection, scan [Cancel on page G-3](#).
- **Two Discrete Lengths** - Decode only Codabar symbols containing either of two lengths. Select lengths using the bar codes in [Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes](#). For example, to decode only Codabar symbols containing either 2 or 14 characters, scan **Codabar - Two Discrete Lengths**, and then scan **0, 2, 1, 4**. To correct an error or change the selection, scan [Cancel on page G-3](#).
- **Length Within Range** - Decode Codabar symbols with a specific length range. Select lengths using the bar codes in [Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes](#). For example, to decode Codabar symbols containing between 4 and 12 characters, scan **Codabar - Length Within Range**, and then scan **0, 4, 1, 2**. To correct an error or change the selection, scan [Cancel on page G-3](#).
- **Any Length** - Decode Codabar symbols containing any number of characters within the scanner's capability.



Codabar - One Discrete Length



Codabar - Two Discrete Lengths



\*Codabar - Length Within Range  
(Default: 4 - 55)



Codabar - Any Length

## CLSI Editing

### Parameter # 54

#### SSI # 36h

Scan **Enable CLSI Editing** to strip the start and stop characters and insert a space after the first, fifth, and tenth characters of a 14-character Codabar symbol if the host system requires this data format.



**NOTE** Symbol length does not include start and stop characters.



**Enable CLSI Editing**  
(1)



**\*Disable CLSI Editing**  
(0)

## NOTIS Editing

### Parameter # 55

#### SSI # 37h

Scan **Enable NOTIS Editing** to strip the start and stop characters from a decoded Codabar symbol if the host system requires this data format.



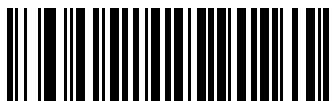
**Enable NOTIS Editing**  
(1)



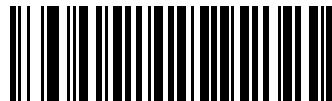
**\*Disable NOTIS Editing**  
(0)

**Codabar Upper or Lower Case Start/Stop Characters****Parameter # 855****SSI # F2h 57h**

Scan one of the following bar codes to select whether to transmit upper case or lower case Codabar start/stop characters.



**Lower Case**  
(1)



**\*Upper Case**  
(0)

---

**MSI****Parameter # 11****SSI # 0Bh**

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable MSI.



**Enable MSI**  
(1)



**\*Disable MSI**  
(0)

## Set Lengths for MSI

**L1 = Parameter # 30**

**SSI # 1Eh**

**L2 = Parameter # 31**

**SSI # 1Fh**

- ✓ **NOTE** The maximum number of 1D bar code characters readable with scanner depends on the type of symbology, type of characters (i.e., digits or letters), printing density, and quality. For reference, the DS2208 reads 3.1 in wide, 10mil 1D bar codes printed with 1200dpi resolution and 80% contrast.

The length of a code refers to the number of characters (i.e., human readable characters), including check digit(s) the code contains. Set lengths for MSI to any length, one or two discrete lengths, or lengths within a specific range. Minimum and maximum length range is from 0 - 55. The default minimum and maximum length range is from 4 - 55.

- ✓ **NOTE** When setting lengths, enter a leading zero for single digit numbers.

Scan one of the following bar codes to select a length option:

- **One Discrete Length** - Decode only MSI symbols containing a selected length. Select the length using the bar codes in [Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes](#). For example, to decode only MSI symbols with 14 characters, scan **MSI - One Discrete Length**, and then scan **1, 4**. To correct an error or change the selection, scan [Cancel on page G-3](#).
- **Two Discrete Lengths** - Decode only MSI symbols containing either of two lengths. Select lengths using the bar codes in [Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes](#). For example, to decode only MSI symbols containing either 2 or 14 characters, scan **MSI - Two Discrete Lengths**, and then scan **0, 2, 1, 4**. To correct an error or change the selection, scan [Cancel on page G-3](#).
- **Length Within Range** - Decode MSI symbols with a specific length range. Select lengths using the bar codes in [Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes](#). For example, to decode MSI symbols containing between 4 and 12 characters, scan **MSI - Length Within Range**, and then scan **0, 4, 1, 2**. To correct an error or change the selection, scan [Cancel on page G-3](#).

## Set Lengths for MSI (continued)

- **Any Length** - Decode MSI symbols containing any number of characters within the scanner's capability.

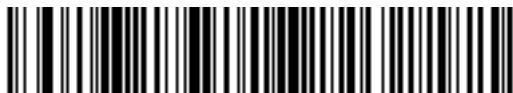
✓ **NOTE** Due to the construction of the MSI symbology, it is possible for a scan line covering only a portion of the code to transmit as a complete scan, yielding less data than is encoded in the bar code. To prevent this, select specific lengths (**MSI - One Discrete Length**, **Two Discrete Lengths**) for MSI applications.



**MSI - One Discrete Length**



**MSI - Two Discrete Lengths**



**\*MSI - Length Within Range**  
(Default: 4 - 55)



**MSI - Any Length**

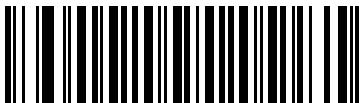
## MSI Check Digits

### Parameter # 50

#### SSI # 32h

With MSI symbols, one check digit is mandatory and always verified by the reader. The second check digit is optional. If the MSI codes include two check digits, scan the **Two MSI Check Digits** bar code to enable verification of the second check digit.

See [MSI Check Digit Algorithm on page 12-63](#) to select second digit algorithms.



\*One MSI Check Digit  
(0)



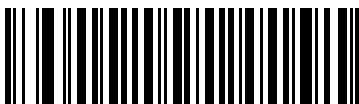
Two MSI Check Digits  
(1)

## Transmit MSI Check Digit(s)

### Parameter # 46

#### SSI # 2Eh

Scan one of the following bar codes to transmit MSI data with or without the check digit.



Transmit MSI Check Digit(s) (Enable)  
(1)



\*Do Not Transmit MSI Check Digit(s) (Disable)  
(0)

## MSI Check Digit Algorithm

### Parameter # 51

#### SSI # 33h

Two algorithms are available for verifying the second MSI check digit. Scan one of the following bar codes to select the algorithm used to encode the check digit.



**MOD 11/MOD 10  
(0)**



**\*MOD 10/MOD 10  
(1)**

## MSI Reduced Quiet Zone

### Parameter # 1392

#### SSI # F8h 05h 70h

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable decoding MSI bar codes with reduced quiet zones. If enabled select a [1D Quiet Zone Level on page 12-77](#).



**NOTE** MSI does not support **1D Quiet Zone Level 3**.



**\*Disable MSI Reduced Quiet Zone  
(0)**



**Enable MSI Reduced Quiet Zone  
(1)**

---

## Chinese 2 of 5

**Parameter # 408**

**SSI # F0h 98h**

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable Chinese 2 of 5.



**Enable Chinese 2 of 5**  
(1)



**\*Disable Chinese 2 of 5**  
(0)

---

## Matrix 2 of 5

**Parameter # 618**

**SSI # F1h 6Ah**

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable Matrix 2 of 5.



**Enable Matrix 2 of 5**  
(1)



**\*Disable Matrix 2 of 5**  
(0)

## Set Lengths for Matrix 2 of 5

**L1 = Parameter # 619**

**SSI # F1h 6Bh**

**L2 = Parameter # 620**

**SSI # F1h 6Ch**

- ✓ **NOTE** The maximum number of 1D bar code characters readable with scanner depends on the type of symbology, type of characters (i.e., digits or letters), printing density, and quality. For reference, the DS2208 reads 3.1 in wide, 10mil 1D bar codes printed with 1200dpi resolution and 80% contrast.

The length of a code refers to the number of characters (i.e., human readable characters), including check digit(s) the code contains. Set lengths for Matrix 2 of 5 to any length, one or two discrete lengths, or lengths within a specific range. Minimum and maximum length range is from 0 - 55. The default minimum and maximum length range is from 4 - 55.

- ✓ **NOTE** When setting lengths, enter a leading zero for single digit numbers.

Scan one of the following bar codes to select a length option:

- **One Discrete Length** - Decode only Matrix 2 of 5 symbols containing a selected length. Select the length using the bar codes in [Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes](#). For example, to decode only Matrix 2 of 5 symbols with 14 characters, scan **Matrix 2 of 5 - One Discrete Length**, and then scan **1, 4**. To correct an error or change the selection, scan [Cancel on page G-3](#).
- **Two Discrete Lengths** - Decode only Matrix 2 of 5 symbols containing either of two lengths. Select lengths using the bar codes in [Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes](#). For example, to decode only Matrix 2 of 5 symbols containing either 2 or 14 characters, scan **Matrix 2 of 5 - Two Discrete Lengths**, and then scan **0, 2, 1, 4**. To correct an error or change the selection, scan [Cancel on page G-3](#).
- **Length Within Range** - Decode Matrix 2 of 5 symbols with a specific length range. Select lengths using the bar codes in [Appendix G, Numeric Bar Codes](#). For example, to decode Matrix 2 of 5 symbols containing between 4 and 12 characters, scan **Matrix 2 of 5 - Length Within Range**, and then scan **0, 4, 1, 2**. To correct an error or change the selection, scan [Cancel on page G-3](#).

## Set Lengths for Matrix 2 of 5 (continued)

- **Any Length** - Decode Matrix 2 of 5 symbols containing any number of characters within the scanner's capability.



Matrix 2 of 5 - One Discrete Length



Matrix 2 of 5 - Two Discrete Lengths



\*Matrix 2 of 5 - Length Within Range  
(Default 4 - 55)



Matrix 2 of 5 - Any Length

**Matrix 2 of 5 Check Digit****Parameter # 622****SSI # F1h 6Eh**

The check digit is the last character of the symbol used to verify the integrity of the data. Scan one of the following bar codes to determine whether to include the Matrix 2 of 5 check digit with the bar code data.



**Enable Matrix 2 of 5 Check Digit  
(1)**



**\*Disable Matrix 2 of 5 Check Digit  
(0)**

**Transmit Matrix 2 of 5 Check Digit****Parameter # 623****SSI # F1h 6Fh**

Scan one of the following bar codes to transmit Matrix 2 of 5 data with or without the check digit.



**Transmit Matrix 2 of 5 Check Digit  
(1)**



**\*Do Not Transmit Matrix 2 of 5 Check Digit  
(0)**

---

## Korean 3 of 5

### Parameter # 581

#### SSI # F1h 45h

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable Korean 3 of 5.



**NOTE** The length for Korean 3 of 5 is fixed at 6.



Enable Korean 3 of 5  
(1)



\*Disable Korean 3 of 5  
(0)

## Inverse 1D

### Parameter # 586

#### SSI # F1h 4Ah

Scan one of the following bar codes to set the 1D inverse decoder setting:

- **Regular Only** - The scanner decodes regular 1D bar codes only.
- **Inverse Only** - The scanner decodes inverse 1D bar codes only.
- **Inverse Autodetect** - The scanner decodes both regular and inverse 1D bar codes.



**NOTE** This parameter does not apply to GS1 DataBar code types.



\*Regular  
(0)



Inverse Only  
(1)



Inverse Autodetect  
(2)

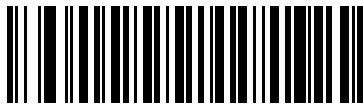
## GS1 DataBar

The variants of GS1 DataBar are DataBar-14, DataBar Expanded, and DataBar Limited. The limited and expanded versions have stacked variants. Scan the appropriate bar codes to enable or disable each variant of GS1 DataBar.

### GS1 DataBar Omnidirectional (formerly GS1 DataBar-14)

Parameter # 338

SSI # F0h 52h



\*Enable GS1 DataBar Omnidirectional  
(1)

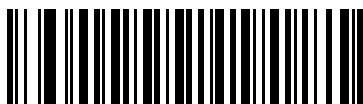


Disable GS1 DataBar Omnidirectional  
(0)

### GS1 DataBar Limited

Parameter # 339

SSI # F0h 53h



\*Enable GS1 DataBar Limited  
(1)



Disable GS1 DataBar Limited  
(0)

**GS1 DataBar Expanded****Parameter # 340****SSI # F0h 54h**

**\*Enable GS1 DataBar Expanded**  
(1)



**Disable GS1 DataBar Expanded**  
(0)

**Convert GS1 DataBar to UPC/EAN/JAN****Parameter # 397****SSI # F0h, 8Dh**

This parameter only applies to GS1 DataBar Omnidirectional and GS1 DataBar Limited symbols not decoded as part of a Composite symbol. Scan **Enable Convert GS1 DataBar to UPC/EAN/JAN** to strip the leading '010' from DataBar-14 and DataBar Limited symbols encoding a single zero as the first digit, and report the bar code as EAN-13.

For bar codes beginning with between two and five zeros, this strips the leading '0100' and reports the bar code as UPC-A. The [UPC-A Preamble](#) option that transmits the system character and country code applies to converted bar codes. Note that neither the system character nor the check digit can be stripped.



**Enable Convert GS1 DataBar to UPC/EAN/JAN**  
(1)



**\*Disable Convert GS1 DataBar to UPC/EAN/JAN**  
(0)

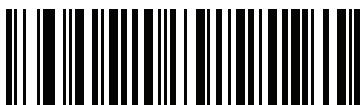
## GS1 DataBar Limited Margin Check

### Parameter # 728

#### SSI # F1h D8h

The decoder offers four levels of margin check for GS1 DataBar Limited bar codes. There is an inverse relationship between level of margin check and decoder aggressiveness. Increasing the level of margin check may result in reduced aggressiveness in scanning, so only choose the level of margin check necessary.

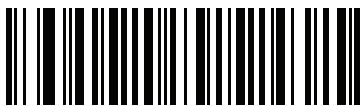
- Level 1: No clear margin required. This complies with the original GS1 standard, yet might result in erroneous decoding of the DataBar Limited bar code when scanning some UPC symbols that start with the digits 9 and 7.
- Level 2: Automatic risk detection. This level of security may result in erroneous decoding of DataBar Limited bar codes when scanning some UPC symbols. If a misdecode is detected, the decoder operates in Level 3 or Level 1.
- Level 3: Margin check level reflects newly proposed GS1 standard that requires a 5x trailing clear margin.
- Level 4: Margin check level extends beyond the standard required by GS1. This level of security requires a 5x leading and trailing clear margin.



**GS1 DataBar Limited Margin Check Level 1**  
(1)



**GS1 DataBar Limited Margin Check Level 2**  
(2)



**\*GS1 DataBar Limited Margin Check Level 3**  
(3)



**GS1 DataBar Limited Margin Check Level 4**  
(4)

## GS1 DataBar Security Level

### Parameter # 1706

#### SSI # F8h 06h AAh

The decoder offers four levels of decode security for GS1 DataBar (GS1 DataBar 14, GS1 DataBar Limited, GS1 DataBar Expanded) bar codes.

- Security Level 0: This setting allows the digital scanner to operate in its most aggressive state, while providing sufficient security in decoding most in-spec bar codes.
- Security Level 1: This setting eliminates most misdecodes while maintaining reasonable aggressiveness (default).
- Security Level 2: This setting allows greater bar code security requirements if Security Level 1 fails to eliminate misdecodes.
- Security Level 3: This setting applies the highest safety requirements. Select if Security Level 2 was applied and misdecodes still occur.



**Security Level 0  
(0)**



**\* Security Level 1  
(1)**



**Security Level 2  
(2)**



**Security Level 3  
(3)**

## Symbology-Specific Security Features

### Redundancy Level

#### Parameter # 78

#### SSI # 4Eh

The scanner offers four levels of decode redundancy. Select higher redundancy levels for decreasing levels of bar code quality. As redundancy levels increase, the scanner's aggressiveness decreases.

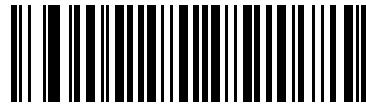
Scan one of the following bar codes to select the redundancy level appropriate for the bar code quality:

- **Redundancy Level 1** - The scanner must read the following code types twice before decoding:
  - Codabar (8 characters or less)
  - MSI (4 characters or less)
  - D 2 of 5 (8 characters or less)
  - I 2 of 5 (8 characters or less)
- **Redundancy Level 2** - The scanner must read all code types twice before decoding.
- **Redundancy Level 3** - The scanner must read code types other than the following twice before decoding, but must read the following codes three times:
  - Codabar (8 characters or less)
  - MSI (4 characters or less)
  - D 2 of 5 (8 characters or less)
  - I 2 of 5 (8 characters or less)
- **Redundancy Level 4** - The scanner must read all code types three times before decoding.

## Redundancy Level (continued)



\*Redundancy Level 1  
(1)



Redundancy Level 2  
(2)



Redundancy Level 3  
(3)



Redundancy Level 4  
(4)

## Security Level

### Parameter # 77

#### SSI # 4Dh

The scanner offers four levels of decode security for delta bar codes, which include the Code 128 family, UPC/EAN/JAN, and Code 93. Select increasing levels of security for decreasing levels of bar code quality. There is an inverse relationship between security and scanner aggressiveness, so choose only that level of security necessary for the application.

- **Security Level 0** - The scanner operates in its most aggressive state, while providing sufficient security decoding most "in-spec" bar codes.
- **Security Level 1** - This default setting eliminates most misdecodes.
- **Security Level 2** - Select this option if Security Level 1 fails to eliminate misdecodes.
- **Security Level 3** - If you selected Security Level 2 and misdecodes still occur, select this security level.

✓ **NOTE** Selecting this option is an extreme measure against mis-decoding severely out-of-spec bar codes, and significantly impairs the decoding ability of the scanner. If this level of security is required, try to improve the quality of the bar codes.



Security Level 0  
(0)



\*Security Level 1  
(1)



Security Level 2  
(2)



Security Level 3  
(3)

## 1D Quiet Zone Level

### Parameter # 1288

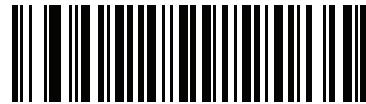
#### SSI # F8h 05h 08h

This feature sets the level of aggressiveness when decoding bar codes with a reduced quiet zone (the margin on either side of a bar code), and applies to symbologies enabled by a Reduced Quiet Zone parameter. Because higher levels increase the decoding time and risk of misdecodes, Zebra strongly recommends enabling only the symbologies which require higher quiet zone levels, and leaving Reduced Quiet Zone disabled for all other symbologies. Options are:

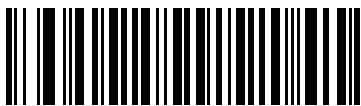
- **1D Quiet Zone Level 0** - The scanner performs normally in terms of quiet zone.
- **1D Quiet Zone Level 1** - The scanner performs more aggressively in terms of quiet zone.
- **1D Quiet Zone Level 2** - The scanner only requires a quiet zone at the end of bar code for decoding.
- **1D Quiet Zone Level 3** - The scanner decodes anything in terms of quiet zone or end of bar code.



1D Quiet Zone Level 0  
(0)



\*1D Quiet Zone Level 1  
(1)



1D Quiet Zone Level 2  
(2)



1D Quiet Zone Level 3  
(3)

## Intercharacter Gap Size

### Parameter # 381

#### SSI # F0h, 7Dh

The Code 39 and Codabar symbologies have an intercharacter gap that is typically quite small. Due to various bar code printing technologies, this gap can grow larger than the maximum size allowed, preventing the scanner from decoding the symbol. If this problem occurs, scan the **Large Intercharacter Gaps** parameter to tolerate these out-of-specification bar codes.



\*Normal Intercharacter Gaps  
(6)



Large Intercharacter Gaps  
(10)

---

## Composite

### Composite CC-C

### Parameter # 341

#### SSI # F0h 55h

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable Composite bar codes of type CC-C.



Enable CC-C  
(1)



\*Disable CC-C  
(0)

**Composite CC-A/B****Parameter # 342****SSI # F0h 56h**

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable Composite bar codes of type CC-A/B.



**Enable CC-A/B**  
**(1)**



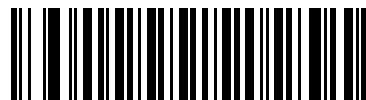
**\*Disable CC-A/B**  
**(0)**

**Composite TLC-39****Parameter # 371****SSI # F0h 73h**

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable Composite bar codes of type TLC-39.



**Enable TLC39**  
**(1)**



**\*Disable TLC39**  
**(0)**

## Composite Inverse

### Parameter # 1113

#### SSI # F8h 04h 59h

This parameter sets Composite for either regular decode or inverse decode. This mode only supports Inverse Composite that has DataBar combined with CCAB. No other 1D/2D combinations.

- **Regular Only:** The digital scanner decodes regular Composite bar codes only. (default).
- **Inverse Only:** The digital scanner decodes inverse Composite bar codes only. For this parameter to work as expected, [Composite CC-A/B on page 12-79](#) and corresponding 1D Inverse or 1D Inverse Autodetect ([page 12-69](#)) must be enabled.



**NOTE** To decode regular Composite, Composite Inverse must be set to **Regular Only** and Inverse 1D must be set to **Regular Only** or **Autodetect**.

To decode inverse Composite, Composite Inverse must be set to **Inverse Only** and Inverse 1D must be set to **Inverse Only** or **Autodetect**.



\* Regular Only  
(0)



Inverse Only  
(1)

## UPC Composite Mode

### Parameter # 344

#### SSI # F0h 58h

Select an option for linking UPC symbols with a 2D symbol during transmission as if they were one symbol:

- **UPC Never Linked** - Transmit UPC bar codes regardless of whether a 2D symbol is detected.
- **UPC Always Linked** - Transmit UPC bar codes and the 2D portion. If 2D is not present, do not transmit the bar code.
- **Autodiscriminate UPC Composites** - The scanner determines if there is a 2D portion, then transmits the UPC, as well as the 2D portion if present.



\***UPC Never Linked**  
(0)



**UPC Always Linked**  
(1)



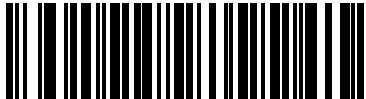
**Autodiscriminate UPC Composites**  
(2)

## Composite Beep Mode

### Parameter # 398

#### SSI # F0h, 8Eh

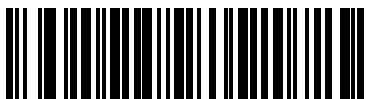
Scan one of the following bar codes to select the number of decode beeps that sound upon decoding a Composite bar code.



Single Beep After Both are Decoded  
(0)



\*Beep as Each Code Type is Decoded  
(1)



Double Beep After Both are Decoded  
(2)

## GS1-128 Emulation Mode for UCC/EAN Composite Codes

### Parameter # 427

#### SSI # F0h, ABh

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable this mode.



Enable GS1-128 Emulation Mode for  
UCC/EAN Composite Codes  
(1)



\*Disable GS1-128 Emulation Mode for  
UCC/EAN Composite Codes  
(0)

---

## 2D Symbolologies

### PDF417

#### Parameter # 15

#### SSI # 0Fh

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable PDF417.



\*Enable PDF417  
(1)



Disable PDF417  
(0)

### MicroPDF417

#### Parameter # 227

#### SSI # E3h

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable MicroPDF417.



Enable MicroPDF417  
(1)



\*Disable MicroPDF417  
(0)

## Code 128 Emulation

### Parameter # 123

#### SSI # 7Bh

Enable this parameter to transmit data from certain MicroPDF417 symbols as Code 128. You must enable [AIM Code Identifiers on page E-3](#) for this parameter to work.

Enable Code 128 Emulation to transmit these MicroPDF417 symbols with one of the following prefixes:

- ]C1 if the first codeword is 903-905
- ]C2 if the first codeword is 908 or 909
- ]C0 if the first codeword is 910 or 911

Disable Code 128 Emulation to transmit these MicroPDF417 symbols with one of the following prefixes:

- ]L3 if the first codeword is 903-905
- ]L4 if the first codeword is 908 or 909
- ]L5 if the first codeword is 910 or 911

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable Code 128 Emulation.

✓ **NOTE** Linked MicroPDF codewords 906, 907, 912, 914, and 915 are not supported. Use GS1 Composites instead.



**Enable Code 128 Emulation**  
(1)



**\*Disable Code 128 Emulation**  
(0)

## Data Matrix

### Parameter # 292

#### SSI # F0h, 24h

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable Data Matrix.



\*Enable Data Matrix  
(1)



Disable Data Matrix  
(0)

## GS1 Data Matrix

### Parameter # 1336

#### SSI # F8h 05h 38h

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable GS1 Data Matrix.



Enable GS1 Data Matrix  
(1)



\*Disable GS1 Data Matrix  
(0)

## Data Matrix Inverse

### Parameter # 588

#### SSI # F1h 4Ch

Scan one of the following bar codes to select the Data Matrix inverse decoder setting:

- **Regular Only** - The scanner decodes regular Data Matrix bar codes only.
- **Inverse Only** - The scanner decodes inverse Data Matrix bar codes only.
- **Inverse Autodetect** - The scanner decodes both regular and inverse Data Matrix bar codes.



Regular Only  
(0)



Inverse Only  
(1)



\*Inverse Autodetect  
(2)

## Decode Data Matrix Mirror Images

### Parameter # 537

#### SSI # F1h 19h

Scan one of the following bar codes to select an option for decoding mirror image Data Matrix bar codes:

- **Never** - Do not decode Data Matrix bar codes that are mirror images.
- **Always** - Decode only Data Matrix bar codes that are mirror images.
- **Auto** - Decode both mirrored and unmirrored Data Matrix bar codes.



Never  
(0)



Always  
(1)



\*Auto  
(2)

## Maxicode

### Parameter # 294

#### SSI # F0h, 26h

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable Maxicode.



**Enable Maxicode**  
(1)



**\*Disable Maxicode**  
(0)

## QR Code

### Parameter # 293

#### SSI # F0h, 25h

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable QR Code.



**\*Enable QR Code**  
(1)



**Disable QR Code**  
(0)

**GS1 QR****Parameter # 1343****SSI # F8h 05h 3Fh**

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable GS1 QR.



**Enable GS1 QR**  
(1)



**\*Disable GS1 QR**  
(0)

**MicroQR****Parameter # 573****SSI # F1h 3Dh**

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable MicroQR.



**\*Enable MicroQR**  
(1)



**Disable MicroQR**  
(0)

## Aztec

### Parameter # 574

#### SSI # F1h 3Eh

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable Aztec.



**NOTE** Enabling this also enables Linked Aztec.



\*Enable Aztec  
(1)



Disable Aztec  
(0)

**Aztec Inverse****Parameter # 589****SSI # F1h 4Dh**

Scan one of the following bar codes to select the Aztec inverse decoder setting:

- **Regular Only** - The scanner decodes regular Aztec bar codes only.
- **Inverse Only** - The scanner decodes inverse Aztec bar codes only.
- **Inverse Autodetect** - The scanner decodes both regular and inverse Aztec bar codes.



**Regular Only**  
(0)



**Inverse Only**  
(1)



**\*Inverse Autodetect**  
(2)

## Han Xin

### Parameter # 1167

### SSI # F8h 04h 8Fh

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable Han Xin.



Enable Han Xin  
(1)



\*Disable Han Xin  
(0)

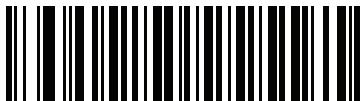
## Han Xin Inverse

### Parameter # 1168

### SSI # F8h 04h 90h

Scan one of the following bar codes to select a Han Xin inverse decoder setting:

- **Regular Only** - The scanner decodes Han Xin bar codes with normal reflectance only.
- **Inverse Only** - The scanner decodes Han Xin bar codes with inverse reflectance only.
- **Inverse Autodetect** - The scanner decodes both regular and inverse Han Xin bar codes.



\*Regular Only  
(0)



Inverse Only  
(1)



Inverse Autodetect  
(2)

## Grid Matrix

### Parameter # 1718

#### SSI # F8h 06h B6h

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable Grid Matrix.



Enable  
(1)



\*Disable  
(0)

## Grid Matrix Inverse

### Parameter # 1719

#### SSI # F8h 06h B7h

Scan one of the following bar codes to select a Grid Matrix inverse decoder setting:

- **Regular Only** - The scanner decodes regular Grid Matrix bar codes only.
- **Inverse Only** - The scanner decodes inverse Grid Matrix bar codes only.
- **Autodiscriminate** - The scanner decodes both regular and inverse Grid Matrix bar codes.



\*Regular Only  
(0)



Inverse Only  
(1)



Autodiscriminate  
(2)

**Grid Matrix Mirror****Parameter # 1736****SSI # F8h 06h C8h**

Scan one of the following bar codes to select a Grid Matrix mirror decoder setting:

- **Regular Only** - The scanner decodes regular Grid Matrix bar codes only.
- **Mirrored Only** - The scanner decodes mirrored Grid Matrix bar codes only.
- **Auto-discriminate** - The scanner decodes both regular and mirrored Grid Matrix bar codes.



**\*Regular Only**  
**(0)**



**Mirrored Only**  
**(1)**



**Autodiscriminate**  
**(2)**

**Escape Characters****Parameter # 233****SSI # E9h**

This enables the backslash (\) character as an Escape character for systems that can process transmissions containing special data sequences. Scan one of the following bar codes to either format special data according to the GLI (Global Label Identifier) protocol, or to disable this parameter. This parameter only affects the data portion

of a Macro PDF symbol transmission; the Macro PDF Control Header (if enabled) is always sent with GLI formatting.



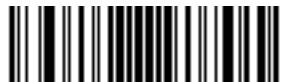
**GLI Protocol**  
**(2)**



**\*None**  
**(0)**

## Flush Macro PDF Buffer

Scan the following bar code to flush the buffer of all decoded Macro PDF data stored to that point, transmit it to the host device, and abort from Macro PDF mode.



**Flush Macro PDF Buffer**

## Abort Macro PDF Entry

Scan the following bar code to clear all currently-stored Macro PDF data in the buffer without transmission and abort from Macro PDF mode.



**Abort Macro PDF Entry**

---

## Postal Codes

### US Postnet

#### Parameter # 89

#### SSI # 59h

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable US Postnet.



Enable US Postnet  
(1)



\*Disable US Postnet  
(0)

### US Planet

#### Parameter # 90

#### SSI # 5Ah

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable US Planet.



Enable US Planet  
(1)



\*Disable US Planet  
(0)

## Transmit US Postal Check Digit

### Parameter # 95

#### SSI # 5Fh

Scan one of the following bar codes to select whether to transmit US Postal data, which includes both US Postnet and US Planet, with or without the check digit.



\*Transmit US Postal Check Digit  
(1)



Do Not Transmit US Postal Check Digit  
(0)

## UK Postal

### Parameter # 91

#### SSI # 5Bh

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable UK Postal.



Enable UK Postal  
(1)



\*Disable UK Postal  
(0)

## Transmit UK Postal Check Digit

### Parameter # 96

#### SSI # 60h

Scan one of the following bar codes to select whether to transmit UK Postal data with or without the check digit.



\*Transmit UK Postal  
Check Digit  
(1)



Do Not Transmit UK Postal Check Digit  
(0)

## Japan Postal

### Parameter # 290

#### SSI # F0h, 22h

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable Japan Postal.



Enable Japan Postal  
(1)



\*Disable Japan Postal  
(0)

**Australia Post**

**Parameter # 291**

**SSI # F0h, 23h**

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable Australia Post.



**Enable Australia Post**  
**(1)**



**\*Disable Australia Post**  
**(0)**

## Australia Post Format

### Parameter # 718

#### SSI # F1h, CEh

Scan one of the following bar codes to select a format for Australia Post:

- **Autodiscriminate** (or Smart mode) - Decode the Customer Information Field using the N and C Encoding Tables.

✓ **NOTE** This option increases the risk of misdecodes because the encoded data format does not specify the Encoding Table used for encoding.

- **Raw Format** - Output raw bar patterns as a series of numbers 0 through 3.
- **Alphanumeric Encoding** - Decode the Customer Information Field using the C Encoding Table.
- **Numeric Encoding** - Decode the Customer Information Field using the N Encoding Table.

For more information on Australia Post Encoding Tables, refer to the *Australia Post Customer Barcoding Technical Specifications* available at [www.auspost.com.au](http://www.auspost.com.au).



\*Autodiscriminate  
(0)



Raw Format  
(1)



Alphanumeric Encoding  
(2)



Numeric Encoding  
(3)

**Netherlands KIX Code****Parameter # 326****SSI # F0h, 46h**

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable Netherlands KIX Code.



**Enable Netherlands KIX Code  
(1)**



**\*Disable Netherlands KIX Code  
(0)**

**USPS 4CB/One Code/Intelligent Mail****Parameter # 592****SSI # F1h 50h**

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable USPS 4CB/One Code/Intelligent Mail.



**Enable USPS 4CB/One Code/Intelligent Mail  
(1)**



**\*Disable USPS 4CB/One Code/Intelligent Mail  
(0)**

## UPU FICS Postal

### Parameter # 611

### SSI # F1h 63h

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable UPU FICS Postal.



Enable UPU FICS Postal  
(1)



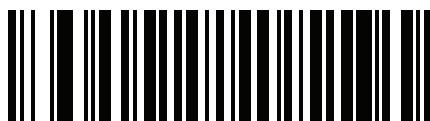
\*Disable UPU FICS Postal  
(0)

## Mailmark

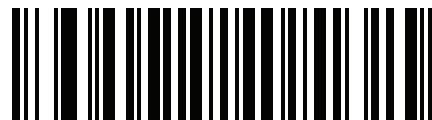
### Parameter # 1337

### SSI # F8h 05h 39h

Scan one of the following bar codes to enable or disable Mailmark.



\*Disable Mailmark  
(0)



Enable Mailmark  
(1)

# CHAPTER 13 DATA FORMATTING: ADF

---

## Introduction

This chapter briefly describes the Zebra software tools available for customizing scanner operation.

---

## Advanced Data Formatting (ADF)

Advanced Data Formatting (ADF) is a means of customizing data from before transmission to the host device. Use ADF to edit scan data to suit your host's requirements. With ADF you scan one barcode per trigger pull. ADF is programmed using 123Scan.

To watch a video on Creating an Advanced Data Formatting (ADF) Rule using 123Scan, go to:

<http://www.zebra.com/ScannerHowToVideos>

For information and programming bar codes for ADF, refer to the *Advanced Data Formatting Programmer Guide*.



# APPENDIX A STANDARD DEFAULT PARAMETERS

**Table A-1 Parameter Defaults**

Parameter	Parameter Number	SSI Number	Default	Page Number
<b>User Preferences</b>				
Set Default Parameter			N/A	<a href="#">5-5</a>
Parameter Bar Code Scanning	236	ECh	Enable	<a href="#">5-6</a>
Beep After Good Decode	56	38h	Enable	<a href="#">5-6</a>
Beeper Volume	140	8Ch	High	<a href="#">5-7</a>
Beeper Tone	145	91h	Medium	<a href="#">5-8</a>
Beeper Duration	628	F1h 74h	Medium	<a href="#">5-9</a>
Suppress Power Up Beeps	721	F1h D1h	Do Not Suppress	<a href="#">5-9</a>
LED on Good Decode	744	F1h E8h	Enable	<a href="#">5-10</a>
Direct Decode Indicator	859	F2h 5Bh	Disable	<a href="#">5-11</a>
Low Power Mode	128	80h	Disable	<a href="#">5-12</a>
Time Delay to Low Power Mode	146	92h	1 Hour	<a href="#">5-13</a>
Trigger Mode (or Hand-Held Trigger Mode)	138	8Ah	Auto Aim	<a href="#">5-15</a>
Hands-Free Mode	630	F1h 76h	Enable	<a href="#">5-16</a>
Hand-Held Decode Aiming Pattern	306	F0h 32h	Enable	<a href="#">5-17</a>
Hands-Free (Presentation) Decode Aiming Pattern	590	F1h 4Eh	Enable Hands-Free (Presentation) Decode Aiming Pattern on PDF	<a href="#">5-18</a>
Picklist Mode	402	F0h 92h	Disable Picklist Mode Always	<a href="#">5-19</a>

**Table A-1 Parameter Defaults (Continued)**

Parameter	Parameter Number	SSI Number	Default	Page Number
Continuous Bar Code Read	649	F1h 89h	Disable	<a href="#">5-20</a>
Unique Bar Code Reporting	723	F1h D3h	Enable	<a href="#">5-20</a>
Decode Session Timeout	136	88h	9.9 Seconds	<a href="#">5-21</a>
Hands-Free Decode Session Timeout	400	F0 90	15	<a href="#">5-21</a>
Timeout Between Decodes, Same Symbol	137	89h	0.5 Seconds	<a href="#">5-22</a>
Timeout Between Decodes, Different Symbols	144	90h	0.1 Seconds	<a href="#">5-22</a>
Decode Mirror Images (Data Matrix Only)	537	F1h 19h	Auto	<a href="#">5-23</a>
Mobile Phone/Display Mode	N/A	N/A	N/A	<a href="#">5-23</a>
PDF Prioritization	719	F1h CFh	Disable	<a href="#">5-24</a>
PDF Prioritization Timeout	720	F1h D0h	200 ms	<a href="#">5-24</a>
Decoding Illumination	298	F0h 2Ah	Enable	<a href="#">5-25</a>
Illumination Brightness	669	F1h 9Dh	High	<a href="#">5-25</a>
Low Light Scene Detection	810	F2h 2Ah	Dim Illumination Low Light Assist Scene Detection	<a href="#">5-26</a>
Motion Tolerance (Hand-Held Trigger Mode Only)	858	F2h 5Ah	Less	<a href="#">5-27</a>
Product ID (PID) Type	1281	F8h 05h 01h	Host Type Unique	<a href="#">5-27</a>
Product ID (PID) Value	1725	F8h 06h BDh	0	<a href="#">5-28</a>
ECLevel	1710	F8h 06h AEh	0	<a href="#">5-28</a>

**Miscellaneous Options**

Enter Key	N/A	N/A	N/A	<a href="#">5-29</a>
Tab Key	N/A	N/A	N/A	<a href="#">5-29</a>
Transmit Code ID Character	45	2Dh	None	<a href="#">5-30</a>
Prefix Value	99, 105	63h, 69h	7013 <CR><LF>	<a href="#">5-31</a>
Suffix 1 Value	98, 104	62h, 68h	7013 <CR><LF>	<a href="#">5-31</a>
Suffix 2 Value	100, 106	64h, 6Ah		
Scan Data Transmission Format	235	EBh	Data As Is	<a href="#">5-32</a>
FN1 Substitution Values	103, 109	67h, 6Dh	7013 <CR><LF>	<a href="#">5-34</a>

**Table A-1 Parameter Defaults (Continued)**

Parameter	Parameter Number	SSI Number	Default	Page Number
Transmit "No Read" Message	94	5E	Disable	<a href="#">5-35</a>
Unsolicited Heartbeat Interval	1118	F8h 04h 5Eh	Disable	<a href="#">5-36</a>
<b>Send Versions</b>				
Software Version	N/A	N/A	N/A	<a href="#">5-37</a>
Serial Number	N/A	N/A	N/A	<a href="#">5-37</a>
Manufacturing Information	N/A	N/A	N/A	<a href="#">5-37</a>
<b>Signature Capture Preferences</b>				
Signature Capture	93	5Dh	Disable	<a href="#">6-3</a>
Signature Capture Image File Format Selection	313	F0h 39h	JPEG	<a href="#">6-4</a>
Signature Capture Bits per Pixel (BPP)	314	F0h 3Ah	8 BPP	<a href="#">6-5</a>
Signature Capture Width	366	F4h F0h 6Eh	400	<a href="#">6-6</a>
Signature Capture Height	367	F4h F0h 6Fh	100	<a href="#">6-6</a>
Signature Capture JPEG Quality	421	F0h A5h	65	<a href="#">6-6</a>
<b>USB Host Parameters</b>				
USB Device Type	N/A	N/A	USB Keyboard HID	<a href="#">7-5</a>
Symbol Native API (SNAPI) Status Handshaking	N/A	N/A	Enable	<a href="#">7-7</a>
USB Keystroke Delay	N/A	N/A	No Delay	<a href="#">7-7</a>
USB CAPS Lock Override	N/A	N/A	Disable	<a href="#">7-8</a>
Bar Codes With Unknown Characters	N/A	N/A	Enable	<a href="#">7-8</a>
USB Convert Unknown to Code 39	N/A	N/A	Disable	<a href="#">7-9</a>
USB Fast HID	N/A	N/A	Enable	<a href="#">7-9</a>
USB Polling Interval	N/A	N/A	3 msec	<a href="#">7-10</a>
Keypad Emulation	N/A	N/A	Enable	<a href="#">7-12</a>
Quick Keypad Emulation	N/A	N/A	Enable	<a href="#">7-12</a>
Keypad Emulation with Leading Zero	N/A	N/A	Enable	<a href="#">7-13</a>
USB Keyboard FN1 Substitution	N/A	N/A	Disable	<a href="#">7-13</a>

**Table A-1 Parameter Defaults (Continued)**

Parameter	Parameter Number	SSI Number	Default	Page Number
Function Key Mapping	N/A	N/A	Disable	<a href="#">7-14</a>
Simulated Caps Lock	N/A	N/A	Disable	<a href="#">7-14</a>
Convert Case	N/A	N/A	None	<a href="#">7-15</a>
CDC Beep on <BEL>	N/A	N/A	Enable	<a href="#">7-16</a>
USB Static CDC	N/A	N/A	Enable	<a href="#">7-15</a>
USB CDC Host Variant	1713	N/A	CDC Standard	<a href="#">7-16</a>
TGCS (IBM) USB Direct I/O Beep	N/A	N/A	Honor	<a href="#">7-19</a>
TGCS (IBM) USB Beep Directive	N/A	N/A	Ignore	<a href="#">7-19</a>
TGCS (IBM) USB Bar Code Configuration Directive	N/A	N/A	Ignore	<a href="#">7-20</a>
TGCS (IBM) USB Specification Version	N/A	N/A	Version 2.2	<a href="#">7-21</a>

**SSI Host Parameters**

Select SSI Host	N/A	N/A	N/A	<a href="#">8-12</a>
Baud Rate	156	9Ch	9600	<a href="#">8-12</a>
Parity	158	9Eh	None	<a href="#">8-14</a>
Check Parity	151	97h	Disable	<a href="#">8-15</a>
Stop Bits	157	9Dh	1	<a href="#">8-15</a>
Software Handshaking	159	9Fh	ACK/NAK	<a href="#">8-16</a>
Host RTS Line State	154	9Ah	Low	<a href="#">8-17</a>
Decode Data Packet Format	238	EEh	Send Raw Decode Data	<a href="#">8-17</a>
Host Serial Response Timeout	155	9Bh	2 Seconds	<a href="#">8-18</a>
Host Character Timeout	239	EFh	200 msec	<a href="#">8-19</a>
Multipacket Option	334	F0h 4Eh	Option 1	<a href="#">8-20</a>
Interpacket Delay	335	F0h 4Fh	0 msec	<a href="#">8-21</a>

**Event Reporting**

Decode Event	256	F0h 00h	Disable	<a href="#">8-22</a>
Boot Up Event	258	F0h 02h	Disable	<a href="#">8-23</a>
Parameter Event	259	F0h 03h	Disable	<a href="#">8-23</a>

**Table A-1 Parameter Defaults (Continued)**

Parameter	Parameter Number	SSI Number	Default	Page Number
<b>RS-232 Host Parameters</b>				
RS-232 Host Types	N/A	N/A	Standard	<a href="#">9-6</a>
Baud Rate	N/A	N/A	9600	<a href="#">9-8</a>
Parity	N/A	N/A	None	<a href="#">9-9</a>
Stop Bits	N/A	N/A	1 Stop Bit	<a href="#">9-9</a>
Data Bits	N/A	N/A	8-bit	<a href="#">9-10</a>
Check Receive Errors	N/A	N/A	Enable	<a href="#">9-10</a>
Hardware Handshaking	N/A	N/A	None	<a href="#">9-11</a>
Software Handshaking	N/A	N/A	None	<a href="#">9-13</a>
Host Serial Response Timeout	N/A	N/A	2 Sec	<a href="#">9-15</a>
RTS Line State	N/A	N/A	Low RTS	<a href="#">9-16</a>
Beep on <BEL>	N/A	N/A	Disable	<a href="#">9-16</a>
Intercharacter Delay	N/A	N/A	0 msec	<a href="#">9-17</a>
Nixdorf Beep/LED Options	N/A	N/A	Normal Operation	<a href="#">9-18</a>
Bar Codes with Unknown Characters	N/A	N/A	Send Bar Code With Unknown Characters	<a href="#">9-18</a>
<b>IBM 468X/469X Host Parameters</b>				
Port Address	N/A	N/A	None	<a href="#">10-4</a>
Convert Unknown to Code 39	N/A	N/A	Disable	<a href="#">10-5</a>
RS-485 Beep Directive	N/A	N/A	Ignore	<a href="#">10-5</a>
RS-485 Bar Code Configuration Directive	N/A	N/A	Ignore	<a href="#">10-6</a>
IBM-485 Specification Version	N/A	N/A	Original Specification	<a href="#">10-6</a>
<b>Keyboard Wedge Host Parameters</b>				
Keyboard Wedge Host Types	N/A	N/A	IBM AT Notebook	<a href="#">11-4</a>
Bar Codes with Unknown Characters	N/A	N/A	Send Bar Codes with Unknown Characters	<a href="#">11-4</a>
Keystroke Delay	N/A	N/A	No Delay	<a href="#">11-5</a>
Intra-keystroke Delay	N/A	N/A	Disable	<a href="#">11-5</a>
Alternate Numeric Keypad Emulation	N/A	N/A	Enable	<a href="#">11-6</a>

**Table A-1 Parameter Defaults (Continued)**

Parameter	Parameter Number	SSI Number	Default	Page Number
Quick Keypad Emulation	N/A	N/A	Enable	<a href="#">11-6</a>
Simulated Caps Lock	N/A	N/A	Disable	<a href="#">11-7</a>
Caps Lock Override	N/A	N/A	Disable	<a href="#">11-7</a>
Convert Case	N/A	N/A	Do Not Convert	<a href="#">11-8</a>
Function Key Mapping	N/A	N/A	Disable	<a href="#">11-8</a>
FN1 Substitution	N/A	N/A	Disable	<a href="#">11-9</a>
Send Make and Break	N/A	N/A	Send	<a href="#">11-9</a>
<b>Enable/Disable All Code Types</b>				<a href="#">12-8</a>

**1D Symbologies****UPC/EAN/JAN**

UPC-A	1	01h	Enable	<a href="#">12-8</a>
UPC-E	2	02h	Enable	<a href="#">12-9</a>
UPC-E1	12	0Ch	Disable	<a href="#">12-9</a>
EAN-8/JAN 8	4	04h	Enable	<a href="#">12-10</a>
EAN-13/JAN 13	3	03h	Enable	<a href="#">12-10</a>
Bookland EAN	83	53h	Disable	<a href="#">12-11</a>
Bookland ISBN Format	576	F1h 40h	ISBN-10	<a href="#">12-12</a>
ISSN EAN	617	F1h 69h	Disable	<a href="#">12-12</a>
Decode UPC/EAN/JAN Supplements (2 and 5 digits)	16	10h	Ignore	<a href="#">12-13</a>
User-Programmable Supplements			000	<a href="#">12-16</a>
Supplemental 1:	579	F1h 43h		
Supplemental 2:	580	F1h 44h		
UPC/EAN/JAN Supplemental Redundancy	80	50h	10	<a href="#">12-16</a>
Decode UPC/EAN/JAN Supplemental AIM ID	672	F1h A0h	Combined	<a href="#">12-13</a>
Transmit UPC-A Check Digit	40	28h	Enable	<a href="#">12-18</a>
Transmit UPC-E Check Digit	41	29h	Enable	<a href="#">12-18</a>

**Table A-1 Parameter Defaults (Continued)**

Parameter	Parameter Number	SSI Number	Default	Page Number
Transmit UPC-E1 Check Digit	42	2Ah	Enable	<a href="#">12-19</a>
UPC-A Preamble	34	22h	System Character	<a href="#">12-20</a>
UPC-E Preamble	35	23h	System Character	<a href="#">12-21</a>
UPC-E1 Preamble	36	24h	System Character	<a href="#">12-22</a>
Convert UPC-E to A	37	25h	Disable	<a href="#">12-23</a>
Convert UPC-E1 to A	38	26h	Disable	<a href="#">12-23</a>
EAN/JAN Zero Extend	39	27h	Disable	<a href="#">12-24</a>
UCC Coupon Extended Code	85	55h	Disable	<a href="#">12-24</a>
Coupon Report	730	F1h DAh	New Coupon Format	<a href="#">12-25</a>
UPC Reduced Quiet Zone	1289	F8h 05h 09h	Disable	<a href="#">12-25</a>
<b>Code 128</b>				
Code 128	8	08h	Enable	<a href="#">12-26</a>
Set Lengths for Code 128	209, 210	D1h, D2h	1 - 55	<a href="#">12-26</a>
GS1-128 (formerly UCC/EAN-128)	14	0Eh	Enable	<a href="#">12-27</a>
ISBT 128	84	54h	Disable	<a href="#">12-28</a>
ISBT Concatenation	577	F1h 41h	Disable	<a href="#">12-29</a>
Check ISBT Table	578	F1h 42h	Enable	<a href="#">12-30</a>
ISBT Concatenation Redundancy	223	DFh	10	<a href="#">12-30</a>
Code 128 <FNC4>	1254	F8h 04h E6h	Honor	<a href="#">12-31</a>
Code 128 Security Level	751	F1h EFh	Security Level 1	<a href="#">12-31</a>
Code 128 Reduced Quiet Zone	1208	F8h 04h B8h	Disable	<a href="#">12-32</a>
<b>Code 39</b>				
Code 39	0	00h	Enable	<a href="#">12-33</a>
Trioptic Code 39	13	0Dh	Disable	<a href="#">12-33</a>
Convert Code 39 to Code 32 (Italian Pharmacy Code)	86	56h	Disable	<a href="#">12-34</a>
Code 32 Prefix	231	E7h	Disable	<a href="#">12-34</a>
Set Lengths for Code 39	18, 19	12h, 13h	1 - 55	<a href="#">12-35</a>
Code 39 Check Digit Verification	48	30h	Disable	<a href="#">12-36</a>

**Table A-1 Parameter Defaults (Continued)**

Parameter	Parameter Number	SSI Number	Default	Page Number
Transmit Code 39 Check Digit	43	2Bh	Disable	<a href="#">12-37</a>
Code 39 Full ASCII Conversion	17	11h	Disable	<a href="#">12-37</a>
Code 39 Security Level	750	F1h EEh	Security Level 1	<a href="#">12-38</a>
Code 39 Reduced Quiet Zone	1209	F8h 04h B9h	Disable	<a href="#">12-40</a>
<b>Code 93</b>				
Code 93	9	09h	Enable	<a href="#">12-40</a>
Set Lengths for Code 93	26, 27	1Ah, 1Bh	1 - 55	<a href="#">12-41</a>
<b>Code 11</b>				
Code 11	10	0Ah	Disable	<a href="#">12-43</a>
Set Lengths for Code 11	28, 29	1Ch, 1Dh	4 - 55	<a href="#">12-43</a>
Code 11 Check Digit Verification	52	34h	Disable	<a href="#">12-45</a>
Transmit Code 11 Check Digit(s)	47	2Fh	Disable	<a href="#">12-46</a>
<b>Interleaved 2 of 5 (ITF)</b>				
Interleaved 2 of 5 (ITF)	6	06h	Enable	<a href="#">12-46</a>
Set Lengths for I 2 of 5	22, 23	16h, 17h	6 - 55	<a href="#">12-47</a>
I 2 of 5 Check Digit Verification	49	31h	Disable	<a href="#">12-49</a>
Transmit I 2 of 5 Check Digit	44	2Ch	Disable	<a href="#">12-50</a>
Convert I 2 of 5 to EAN 13	82	52h	Disable	<a href="#">12-50</a>
Febraban	1750	F8h 06h D6h	Disable	<a href="#">12-51</a>
I 2 of 5 Security Level	1121	F8h 04h 61h	Security Level 1	<a href="#">12-52</a>
I 2 of 5 Reduced Quiet Zone	1210	F8h 04h BAh	Disable	<a href="#">12-53</a>
<b>Discrete 2 of 5 (DTF)</b>				
Discrete 2 of 5	5	05h	Disable	<a href="#">12-53</a>
Set Lengths for D 2 of 5	20, 21	14h 15h	1 - 55	<a href="#">12-54</a>
<b>Codabar (NW - 7)</b>				
Codabar	7	07h	Enable	<a href="#">12-56</a>
Set Lengths for Codabar	24, 25	18h, 19h	4 - 55	<a href="#">12-56</a>
CLSI Editing	54	36h	Disable	<a href="#">12-58</a>

**Table A-1 Parameter Defaults (Continued)**

Parameter	Parameter Number	SSI Number	Default	Page Number
NOTIS Editing	55	37h	Disable	<a href="#">12-58</a>
Codabar Upper or Lower Case Start/Stop Characters Detection	855	F2h 57h	Upper Case	<a href="#">12-59</a>
<b>MSI</b>				
MSI	11	0Bh	Disable	<a href="#">12-59</a>
Set Lengths for MSI	30, 31	1Eh, 1Fh	4 - 55	<a href="#">12-60</a>
MSI Check Digits	50	32h	One	<a href="#">12-62</a>
Transmit MSI Check Digit	46	2Eh	Disable	<a href="#">12-62</a>
MSI Check Digit Algorithm	51	33h	Mod 10/Mod 10	<a href="#">12-63</a>
MSI Reduced Quiet Zone	1392	F8h 05h 70h	Disable	<a href="#">12-63</a>
<b>Chinese 2 of 5</b>				
Chinese 2 of 5	408	F0h 98h	Disable	<a href="#">12-64</a>
<b>Matrix 2 of 5</b>				
Matrix 2 of 5	618	F1h 6Ah	Disable	<a href="#">12-64</a>
Set Lengths for Matrix 2 of 5	619 620	F1h 6Bh F1h 6Ch	4 - 55	<a href="#">12-65</a>
Matrix 2 of 5 Check Digit	622	F1h 6Eh	Disable	<a href="#">12-67</a>
Transmit Matrix 2 of 5 Check Digit	623	F1h 6Fh	Disable	<a href="#">12-67</a>
<b>Korean 3 of 5</b>				
Korean 3 of 5	581	F1h 45h	Disable	<a href="#">12-68</a>
<b>Inverse 1D</b>	586	F1h 4Ah	Regular	<a href="#">12-69</a>
<b>GS1 DataBar</b>				
GS1 DataBar Omnidirectional	338	F0h 52h	Enable	<a href="#">12-70</a>
GS1 DataBar Limited	339	F0h 53h	Enable	<a href="#">12-70</a>
GS1 DataBar Expanded	340	F0h 54h	Enable	<a href="#">12-71</a>
Convert GS1 DataBar to UPC/EAN/JAN	397	F0h 8Dh	Disable	<a href="#">12-71</a>
GS1 DataBar Limited Margin Check	728	F1h D8h	Level 3	<a href="#">12-72</a>
GS1 DataBar Security Level	1706	F8h 06h AAh	Level 1	<a href="#">12-73</a>

**Table A-1 Parameter Defaults (Continued)**

Parameter	Parameter Number	SSI Number	Default	Page Number
<b>Symbology-Specific Security Features</b>				
Redundancy Level	78	4Eh	1	<a href="#">12-74</a>
Security Level	77	4Dh	1	<a href="#">12-76</a>
1D Quiet Zone Level	1288	F8h 05h 08h	1	<a href="#">12-77</a>
Intercharacter Gap Size	381	F0h 7Dh	Normal	<a href="#">12-78</a>
<b>Composite Codes</b>				
Composite CC-C	341	F0h 55h	Disable	<a href="#">12-78</a>
Composite CC-A/B	342	F0h 56h	Disable	<a href="#">12-79</a>
Composite TLC-39	371	F0h 73h	Disable	<a href="#">12-79</a>
Composite Inverse	1113	F8h 04h 59h	Regular Only	<a href="#">12-80</a>
UPC Composite Mode	344	F0h 58h	UPC Never Linked	<a href="#">12-81</a>
Composite Beep Mode	398	F0h 8Eh	Beep As Each Code Type is Decoded	<a href="#">12-82</a>
GS1-128 Emulation Mode for UCC/EAN Composite Codes	427	F0h ABh	Disable	<a href="#">12-82</a>
<b>2D Symbolologies</b>				
PDF417	15	0Fh	Enable	<a href="#">12-83</a>
MicroPDF417	227	E3h	Disable	<a href="#">12-83</a>
Code 128 Emulation	123	7Bh	Disable	<a href="#">12-84</a>
Data Matrix	292	F0h 24h	Enable	<a href="#">12-85</a>
GS1 Data Matrix	1336	F8h 05h 38h	Disable	<a href="#">12-85</a>
Data Matrix Inverse	588	F1h 4Ch	Inverse Autodetect	<a href="#">12-86</a>
Decode Data Matrix Mirror Images	537	F1h 19h	Auto	<a href="#">12-87</a>
Maxicode	294	F0h 26h	Disable	<a href="#">12-88</a>
QR Code	293	F0h 25h	Enable	<a href="#">12-88</a>
GS1 QR	1343	F8h 05h 3Fh	Disable	<a href="#">12-89</a>
MicroQR	573	F1h 3Dh	Enable	<a href="#">12-89</a>
Aztec	574	F1h 3Eh	Enable	<a href="#">12-90</a>
Aztec Inverse	589	F1h 4Dh	Inverse Autodetect	<a href="#">12-91</a>
Han Xin	1167	F8h 04h 8Fh	Disable	<a href="#">12-92</a>

**Table A-1 Parameter Defaults (Continued)**

Parameter	Parameter Number	SSI Number	Default	Page Number
Han Xin Inverse	1168	F8h 04h 90h	Regular	<a href="#">12-92</a>
Grid Matrix	1718	F8 06 B6	Disable	<a href="#">12-93</a>
Grid Matrix Inverse	1719	F8 06 B7	Regular Only	<a href="#">12-93</a>
Grid Matrix Mirror	1736	F8 06 C8	Regular Only	<a href="#">12-94</a>
<b>Postal Codes</b>				
US Postnet	89	59h	Disable	<a href="#">12-96</a>
US Planet	90	5Ah	Disable	<a href="#">12-96</a>
Transmit US Postal Check Digit	95	5Fh	Enable	<a href="#">12-97</a>
UK Postal	91	5Bh	Disable	<a href="#">12-97</a>
Transmit UK Postal Check Digit	96	60h	Enable	<a href="#">12-98</a>
Japan Postal	290	F0h 22h	Disable	<a href="#">12-98</a>
Australia Post	291	F0h 23h	Disable	<a href="#">12-99</a>
Australia Post Format	718	F1h CEh	Autodiscriminate	<a href="#">12-100</a>
Netherlands KIX Code	326	F0h 46h	Disable	<a href="#">12-101</a>
USPS 4CB/One Code/Intelligent Mail	592	F1h 50h	Disable	<a href="#">12-101</a>
UPU FICS Postal	611	F1h 63h	Disable	<a href="#">12-102</a>
Mailmark	1337	F8h 05h 39h	Disable	<a href="#">12-102</a>



# APPENDIX B COUNTRY CODES

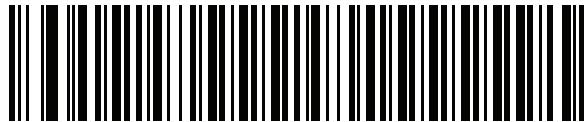
---

## Introduction

This chapter provides instructions for programming the keyboard to interface with a USB or keyboard wedge host. The host powers the scanner. For host setup information, see [Chapter 7, USB Interface](#) and [Chapter 11, Keyboard Wedge Interface](#).

To select a code page for the country keyboard type, see [Appendix B, Country Codes](#).

Throughout the programming bar code menus, default values are indicated with asterisks (\*).



\*Indicates Default ————— \*US English (North American) ————— Feature/Option

## USB and Keyboard Wedge Country Keyboard Types (Country Codes)

Scan the bar code corresponding to the keyboard type. For a USB host, this setting applies only to the USB Keyboard (HID) device. If the keyboard type is not listed, see [Keypad Emulation on page 7-12](#) for the USB HID host. For a keyboard wedge host, see [Alternate Numeric Keypad Emulation on page 11-6](#).

✓ **NOTE** When changing USB country keyboard types the digital scanner automatically resets and issues the standard startup beep sequences.

✓ **NOTE** For best results when using international keyboards, enable [Quick Keypad Emulation on page 7-12](#).



**IMPORTANT**

1. Some country keyboard bar code types are specific to certain Windows Operating Systems (i.e., XP, and Win 7 or higher). Bar codes requiring a specific Windows OS are noted so in their bar code captions.
2. Use the **French International** bar code for Belgian French keyboards.



\*US English (North American)



US English (Mac)



Albanian



Arabic (101)

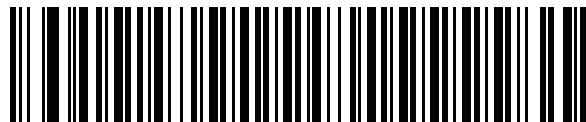
## Country Codes (Continued)



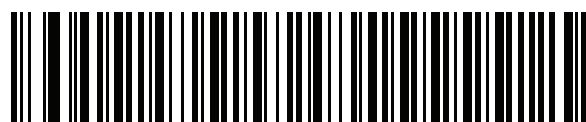
Arabic (102)



Arabic (102) AZERTY



Azeri (Latin)



Azeri (Cyrillic)



Belarusian



Bosnian (Latin)



Bosnian (Cyrillic)

## Country Codes (Continued)



Bulgarian (Latin)



Bulgarian Cyrillic (Typewriter)  
(Bulgarian -Windows XP  
Typewriter - Win 7 or higher)



Canadian French Win7



Canadian French (Legacy)



Canadian Multilingual Standard



Chinese (ASCII)

## Country Codes (Continued)



Chinese (Simplified)\*



Chinese (Traditional)\*

\*For CJK keyboard types, see [Appendix D, CKJ Decode Control](#).



Croatian



Czech



Czech (Programmer)



Czech (QWERTY)



Danish

## Country Codes (Continued)



Dutch (Netherlands)



Estonian



Faeroese



Finnish



French (France)



French International  
(Belgian French)



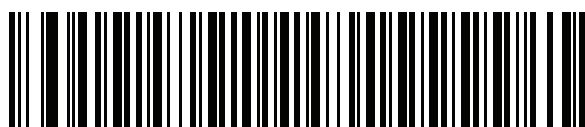
French (Canada) 95/98

## Country Codes (Continued)



French (Canada) 2000/XP\*

\*Note that there is also a country code bar code for *Canadian Multilingual Standard on page B-4*. Be sure to select the appropriate bar code for your host system.



Galician



German



Greek Latin



Greek (220) Latin



Greek (319) Latin



Greek

## Country Codes (Continued)



Greek (220)



Greek (319)



Greek Polytonic



Hebrew Israel



Hungarian



Hungarian\_101KEY



Icelandic

## Country Codes (Continued)



Irish



Italian



Italian (142)



Japanese (ASCII)



Japanese (SHIFT-JIS)\*

\*For CJK keyboard types, see [Appendix D, CKJ Decode Control](#).



Kazakh



Korean (ASCII)

## Country Codes (Continued)



Korean (Hangul)\*

\*For CJK keyboard types, see [Appendix D, CJK Decode Control](#).



Kyrgyz



Latin American



Latvian



Latvian (QWERTY)



Lithuanian



Lithuanian (IBM)

## Country Codes (Continued)



Macedonian (FYROM)



Maltese\_47KEY



Mongolian



Norwegian



Polish (214)



Polish (Programmer)



Portuguese (Brazil)  
(Windows XP)

## Country Codes (Continued)



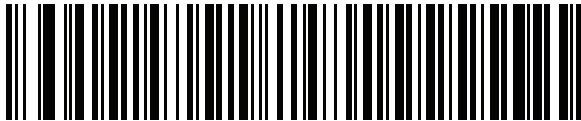
Portuguese (Brazilian ABNT)



Portuguese (Brazilian ABNT2)



Portuguese (Portugal)



Romanian  
(Windows XP)



Romanian (Legacy)  
(Win 7 or higher)



Romanian (Standard)  
(Win 7 or higher)

## Country Codes (Continued)



Romanian (Programmer)  
(Win 7 or higher)



Russian



Russian (Typewriter)



Serbian (Latin)



Serbian (Cyrillic)

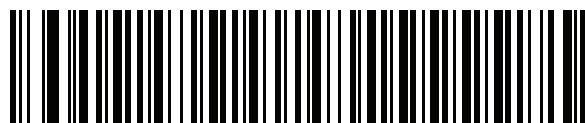


Slovak

## Country Codes (Continued)



Slovak (QWERTY)



Slovenian



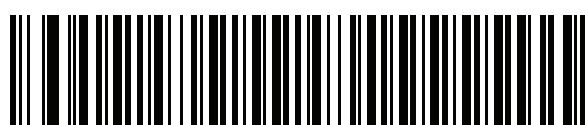
Spanish



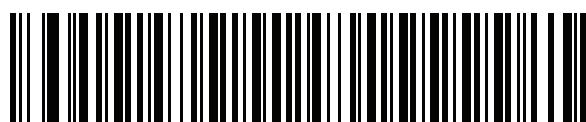
Spanish (Variation)



Swedish



Swiss French



Swiss German

## Country Codes (Continued)



Tatar



Thai (Kedmanee)



Turkish F



Turkish Q



UK English

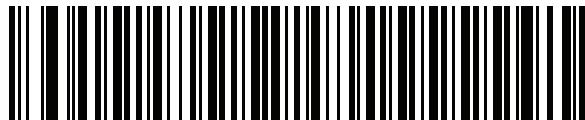


Ukrainian



US Dvorak

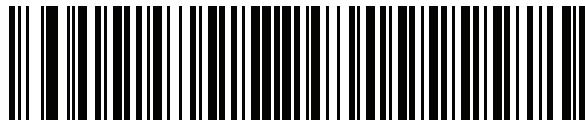
## Country Codes (Continued)



US Dvorak Left



US Dvorak Right



US International



Uzbek



Vietnamese

# APPENDIX C COUNTRY CODE PAGES

## Introduction

This chapter provides bar codes for selecting code pages for the country keyboard type selected in [Appendix C, Country Code Pages](#). If the default code page in [Table C-1](#) is appropriate for your selected country keyboard type, you do not need to scan a country code page bar code.

✓ **NOTE** ADF rules can also specify a code page based on the symbology and other ADF criteria. Refer to the *Advanced Data Formatting Programmer Guide*.

## Country Code Page Defaults

[Table C-1](#) lists the code page default for each country keyboard.

**Table C-1** *Country Code Page Defaults*

Country Keyboard	Code Page Default
US English (North American)	Windows 1252
US English (Mac)	Mac CP10000
Albanian	Windows 1250
Arabic 101	Windows 1256
Arabic 102	Windows 1256
Arabic 102 AZERTY	Windows 1256
Azeri Latin	Windows 1254
Azeri Cyrillic	Windows 1251
Belarusian	Windows 1251
Bosnian Latin	Windows 1250

**Table C-1 Country Code Page Defaults (Continued)**

<b>Country Keyboard</b>	<b>Code Page Default</b>
Bosnian Cyrillic	Windows 1251
Bulgarian Latin	Windows 1250
Bulgarian Cyrillic	Windows 1251
Canadian French Win7	Windows 1252
Canadian French (Legacy)	Windows 1252
Canadian Multilingual	Windows 1252
Croatian	Windows 1250
Chinese ASCII	Windows 1252
Chinese (Simplified)	Windows 936, GBK
Chinese (Traditional)	Windows 950, Big5
Czech	Windows 1250
Czech Programmers	Windows 1250
Czech QWERTY	Windows 1250
Danish	Windows 1252
Dutch Netherland	Windows 1252
Estonian	Windows 1257
Faeroese	Windows 1252
Finnish	Windows 1252
French (France)	Windows 1252
French (Canada) 95/98	Windows 1252
French (Canada) 2000/XP	Windows 1252
French International (Belgian French)	Windows 1252
Galician	Windows 1252
German	Windows 1252
Greek Latin	Windows 1252
Greek220 Latin	Windows 1253
Greek319 Latin	Windows 1252
Greek	Windows 1253
Greek220	Windows 1253
Greek319	Windows 1253

**Table C-1 Country Code Page Defaults (Continued)**

<b>Country Keyboard</b>	<b>Code Page Default</b>
Greek Polytonic	Windows 1253
Hebrew Israel	Windows 1255
Hungarian	Windows 1250
Hungarian_101KEY	Windows 1250
Icelandic	Windows 1252
Irish	Windows 1252
Italian	Windows 1252
Italian_142	Windows 1252
Japanese ASCII	Windows 1252
Japanese (Shift-JIS)	Windows 932, Shift-JIS
Kazakh	Windows 1251
Korean ASCII	Windows 1252
Korean (Hangul)	Windows 949, Hangul
Kyrgyz Cyrillic	Windows 1251
Latin America	Windows 1252
Latvian	Windows 1257
Latvian QWERTY	Windows 1257
Lithuanian	Windows 1257
Lithuanian_IBM	Windows 1257
Macedonian -FYROM	Windows 1251
Maltese_47KEY	Windows 1252
Mongolian-Cyrillic	Windows 1251
Norwegian	Windows 1252
Polish_214	Windows 1250
Polish Programmer	Windows 1250
Portuguese Brazil	Windows 1252
Portuguese Brazilian ABNT	Windows 1252
Portuguese Brazilian ABNT2	Windows 1252
Portuguese Portugal	Windows 1252
Romanian	Windows 1250

**Table C-1 Country Code Page Defaults (Continued)**

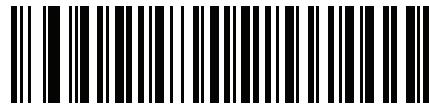
<b>Country Keyboard</b>	<b>Code Page Default</b>
Romanian Legacy	Windows 1250
Romanian Standard	Windows 1250
Romanian Programmer	Windows 1250
Russian	Windows 1251
Russian Typewriter	Windows 1251
Serbian Latin	Windows 1250
Serbian Cyrillic	Windows 1251
Slovak	Windows 1250
Slovak QWERTY	Windows 1250
Slovenian	Windows 1250
Spanish	Windows 1252
Spanish Variation	Windows 1252
Swedish	Windows 1252
Swiss French	Windows 1252
Swiss German	Windows 1252
Tatar	Windows 1251
Thai-Kedmanee	Windows 874
Turkish F	Windows 1254
Turkish Q	Windows 1254
Ukrainian	Windows 1251
United Kingdom	Windows 1252
United States	Windows 1252
US Dvorak	Windows 1252
US Dvorak Left Hand	Windows 1252
US Dvorak Right Hand	Windows 1252
US International	Windows 1252
Uzbek Cyrillic	Windows 1251
Vietnamese	Windows 1258

## Country Code Page Bar Codes

Scan the bar code corresponding to the country keyboard code page.



**Windows 1250**  
**Latin 2, Central European**



**Windows 1251**  
**Cyrillic, Slavic**



**Windows 1252**  
**Latin 1, Western European**



**Windows 1253**  
**Greek**



**Windows 1254**  
**Latin 5, Turkish**

## Country Code Pages (Continued)



Windows 1255  
Hebrew



Windows 1256  
Arabic



Windows 1257  
Baltic

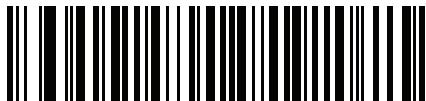


Windows 1258  
Vietnamese



Windows 874  
Thai

## Country Code Pages (Continued)



Windows 20866  
Cyrillic KOI8-R



Windows 932  
Japanese Shift-JIS



Windows 936  
Simplified Chinese GBK



Windows 54936  
Simplified Chinese GB18030



Windows 949  
Korean Hangul

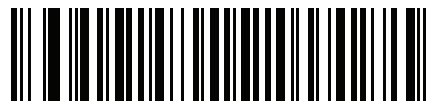


Windows 950  
Traditional Chinese Big5

### **Country Code Pages (Continued)**



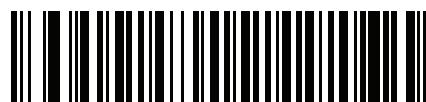
**MS-DOS 437**  
Latin US



**MS-DOS 737**  
Greek



**MS-DOS 775**  
Baltic



**MS-DOS 850**  
Latin 1

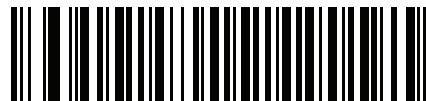


**MS-DOS 852**  
Latin 2

## Country Code Pages (Continued)



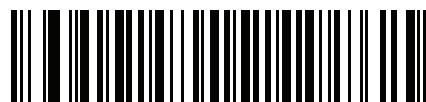
**MS-DOS 855**  
Cyrillic



**MS-DOS 857**  
Turkish



**MS-DOS 860**  
Portuguese



**MS-DOS 861**  
Icelandic

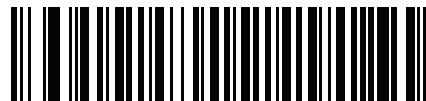


**MS-DOS 862**  
Hebrew

## Country Code Pages (Continued)



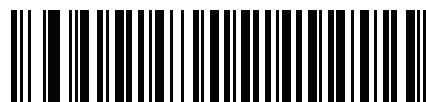
**MS-DOS 863**  
French Canada



**MS-DOS 865**  
Nordic



**MS-DOS 866**  
Cyrillic



**MS-DOS 869**  
Greek 2

## Country Code Pages (Continued)



ISO 8859-1  
Latin 1, Western European



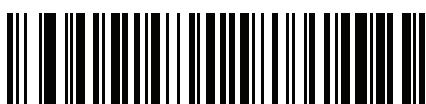
ISO 8859-2  
Latin 2, Central European



ISO 8859-3  
Latin 3, South European



ISO 8859-4  
Latin 4, North European



ISO 8859-5  
Cyrillic

## Country Code Pages (Continued)



ISO 8859-6  
Arabic



ISO 8859-7  
Greek



ISO 8859-8  
Hebrew

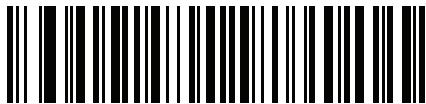


ISO 8859-9  
Latin 5, Turkish

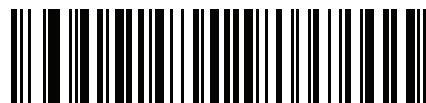


ISO 8859-10  
Latin 6, Nordic

## Country Code Pages (Continued)



ISO 8859-11  
Thai



ISO 8859-13  
Latin 7, Baltic



ISO 8859-14  
Latin 8, Celtic



ISO 8859-15  
Latin 9



ISO 8859-16  
Latin 10, South-Eastern European

## Country Code Pages (Continued)



UTF-8



UTF-16LE  
UTF-16 LittleEndian



UTF-16BE  
UTF-16 BigEndian



Mac CP10000  
Roman

# APPENDIX D CJK DECODE CONTROL

---

## Introduction

This appendix describes control parameters for CJK (Chinese, Japanese, Korean) bar code decode through USB HID Keyboard Emulation mode.



***NOTE*** Because ADF does not support CJK character processing, there is no format manipulation for CJK output.

## CJK Control Parameters

### Unicode Output Control

#### Parameter # 973

For a Unicode encoded CJK bar code, select one of the following options for unicode output:

- **Universal Output to Unicode and MBCS Application** - This default method applies to Unicode and MBCS expected applications, such as MS Word and Notepad on a Windows host.
- ✓ **NOTE** To support Unicode universal output, set up the registry table for the Windows host. See [Unicode/CJK Decode Setup with Windows Host on page D-7](#).
- **Output to Unicode Application Only** - This method applies only to Unicode expected applications, such as MS Word and WordPad, but not Notepad.



\*Universal Output  
(0)



Unicode Application Only  
(1)

## CJK Output Method to Windows Host

### Parameter # 972

For a national standard encoded CJK bar code, select one of the following options for CJK output to a Windows host:

- **Universal CJK Output** - This is the default universal CJK output method for US English IME or Chinese/Japanese/Korean ASCII IME on a Windows host. This method converts CJK characters to Unicode and emulates the characters when transmitting to the host. Use the [Unicode Output Control](#) parameter to control Unicode output.

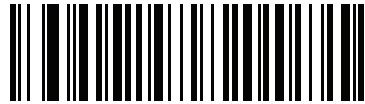
 **NOTE** To support universal CJK output, set up the registry table for the Windows host. See [Unicode/CJK Decode Setup with Windows Host on page D-7](#).

- **Other options for CJK output** - With the following methods, the scanner sends the CJK character hexadecimal internal code (Nei Ma) value to host, or converts the CJK character to Unicode and sends the hexadecimal Unicode value to host. When using these methods, the Windows host must select the corresponding IME to accept the CJK character. See [Unicode/CJK Decode Setup with Windows Host on page D-7](#).
  - **Japanese Unicode Output**
  - **Simplified Chinese GBK Code Output**
  - **Simplified Chinese Unicode Output**
  - **Korean Unicode Code Output**
  - **Traditional Chinese Big5 Code Output** (Windows XP)
  - **Traditional Chinese Big5 Code Output** (Windows 7)
  - **Traditional Chinese Unicode Code Output** (Windows XP)
  - **Traditional Chinese Unicode Code Output** (Windows 7)

 **NOTE** The Unicode emulate output method depends on the host system (Windows XP or Windows 7).



\*Universal CJK Output  
(0)



Japanese Unicode Output  
(34)

(for Japanese Unicode Output, select Simplified Chinese Unicode IME on the Windows host)

## CJK Output Method to Windows Host (continued)



**Chinese (Simplified) GBK Output  
(1)**



**Chinese (Simplified) Unicode Output  
(2)**



**Korean Unicode Output  
(50)**

(for Korean Unicode Output, select Simplified Chinese  
Unicode IME on the Windows host)



**Chinese (Traditional) Big5 Output (Windows XP)  
(17)**



**Chinese (Traditional) Big5 Output (Windows 7)  
(19)**



**Chinese (Traditional) Unicode Output (Windows XP)  
(18)**



**Chinese (Traditional) Unicode Output (Windows 7)  
(20)**

## Non-CJK UTF Bar Code Output

### Parameter # 960

Some country keyboard type layouts contain characters that do not exist in the default code page (see [Country Keyboard Type Missing Characters on page D-6](#)). Although the default code page can not encode these characters in a bar code, they can be encoded in the UTF-8 bar code. Scan this parameter bar code to output the Unicode values by emulation mode.

✓ **NOTE** Use this special country keyboard type to decode the non-CJK UTF-8 bar code. After decoding, re-configure the scanner to use the original country keyboard type.

Use US English IME on Windows. See [Unicode Output Control on page D-2](#).



Non-CJK UTF-8 Emulation Output

### Country Keyboard Type Missing Characters

Country keyboard type: **Tatar, Uzbek, Mongolian, Kyrgyz, Kazakh and Azeri**

Default code page: CP1251

Missing characters:

F	Ӯ
X	Ӯ
҆	Ӯ
h	Ӯ
ө	Ӯ
ә	Ӯ
Ҏ	Ӯ
Ҥ	Ӯ
҂	Ӯ
Ҥ	Ӯ
҄	Ӯ
҅	Ӯ
҆	Ӯ
҈	Ӯ
҉	Ӯ
Ҋ	Ӯ
ҋ	Ӯ
Ҍ	Ӯ

Country keyboard type: **Romanian (Standard)**

Default code page: CP1250

Missing characters:

ş	Ş
ť	Ť

Country keyboard type: **Portuguese-Brazilian (ABNT), Portuguese-Brazilian (ABNT2)**

Default code page: CP1252

Missing character: **ѓ**

Country keyboard type: **Azeri-Latin**

Default code page: CP1254

Missing characters: œ, Ð

## Unicode/CJK Decode Setup with Windows Host

This section describes how to set up CJK decode with a Windows host.

### Setting Up the Windows Registry Table for Unicode Universal Output

To support the Unicode universal output method, set up the Windows host registry table as follows:

1. Select **Start > Run > regedit32** to start the registry editor.
2. Under **HKEY\_Current\_User\Control Panel\Input Method**, set **EnableHexNumpad** to **1** as follows:  
[HKEY\_CURRENT\_USER\Control Panel\Input Method]  
"EnableHexNumpad"="1"  
If this key does not exist, add it as type **REG\_SZ** (string value).
3. Reboot the computer to implement the registry change.

### Adding CJK IME on Windows

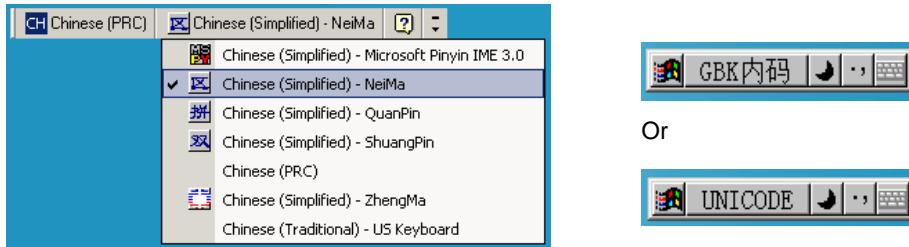
To add the desired CJK input language:

1. Click **Start > Control Panel**.
2. If the Control Panel opens in category view, select **Switch to Classic View** in the top left corner.
3. Select **Regional and Language Options**.
4. Click the **Language** tab.
5. Under **Supplemental Language Support**, select the **Install Files for East Asian Languages** check box if not already selected, and click **Apply**. This may require a Windows installation CD to install the required files. This step ensures that the East Asian Languages (CJK) are available.
6. Under **Text Services and Input Language**, click **Details**.
7. Under **Installed Services**, click **Add**.
8. In the **Add Input Language** dialog box, choose the CJK input language and keyboard layout or Input Method Editor (IME) to add.
9. Click **OK** twice. The language indicator appears in the system tray (at bottom right corner of the desktop by default). To switch between input languages (keyboard languages) select the language indicator in the system tray.
10. Select the language indicator in the system tray to select the desired country keyboard type.
11. Verify that the characters displayed on each country's keyboard appear.

## Selecting the Simplified Chinese Input Method on the Host

To select the Simplified Chinese input method:

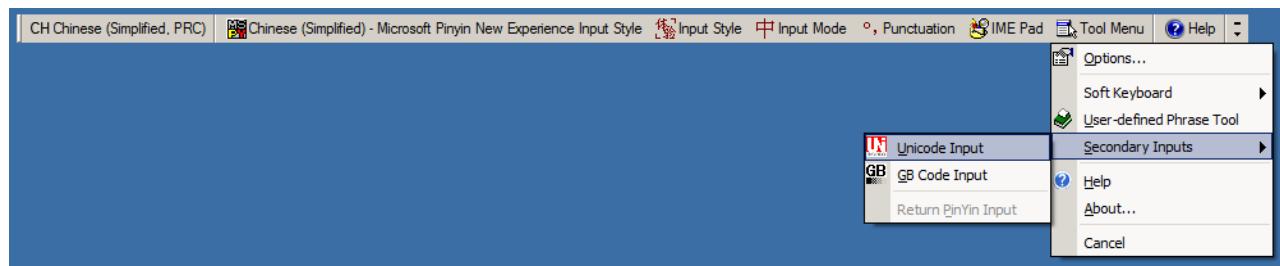
- Select Unicode/GBK input on Windows XP: **Chinese (Simplified) - NeiMa**, then click the input bar to select **Unicode** or **GBK NeiMa** input.



Or



- Select Unicode/GBK input on Windows7: **Chinese (Simplified) - Microsoft Pinyin New Experience Input Style**, then select **Tool Menu > Secondary Inputs > Unicode Input** or **GB Code Input**.



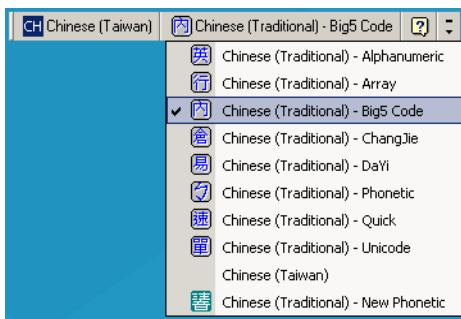
## Selecting the Traditional Chinese Input Method on the Host

To select the Traditional Chinese input method:

- Select Unicode input on Windows XP: **Chinese (Traditional) - Unicode**



- Select Big5 input on Windows XP: **Chinese (Traditional) - Big5 Code**



- Select Unicode/Big5 input on Windows 7: **Chinese (Traditional) - New Quick**. This option support both Unicode and Big5 input.





# APPENDIX E PROGRAMMING REFERENCE

---

## Symbol Code Identifiers

Table E-1 *Symbol Code Characters*

Code Character	Code Type
A	UPC-A, UPC-E, UPC-E1, EAN-8, EAN-13
B	Code 39, Code 32
C	Codabar
D	Code 128, ISBT 128, ISBT 128 Concatenated
E	Code 93
F	Interleaved 2 of 5
G	Discrete 2 of 5, or Discrete 2 of 5 IATA
H	Code 11
J	MSI
K	GS1-128
L	Bookland EAN
M	Trioptic Code 39
N	Coupon Code
R	GS1 DataBar Family
S	Matrix 2 of 5
T	UCC Composite, TLC 39
U	Chinese 2 of 5

**Table E-1** *Symbol Code Characters (Continued)*

Code Character	Code Type
V	Korean 3 of 5
X	ISSN EAN, PDF417, Macro PDF417, Micro PDF417
z	Aztec, Aztec Rune
P00	Data Matrix
P01	QR Code, MicroQR
P02	Maxicode
P03	US Postnet
P04	US Planet
P05	Japan Postal
P06	UK Postal
P08	Netherlands KIX Code
P09	Australia Post
P0A	USPS 4CB/One Code/Intelligent Mail
P0B	UPU FICS Postal
P0C	Mailmark
P0G	GS1 Data Matrix
P0H	Han Xin
P0Q	GS1 QR
P0X	Signature Capture

## AIM Code Identifiers

Each AIM Code Identifier contains the three-character string **]cm** where:

- ]** = Flag Character (ASCII 93)
- c** = Code Character (see [Table E-2](#))
- m** = Modifier Character (see [Table E-3](#))

**Table E-2 Aim Code Characters**

Code Character	Code Type
A	Code 39, Code 39 Full ASCII, Code 32
C	Code 128, ISBT 128, ISBT 128 Concatenated, GS1-128, Coupon (Code 128 portion)
d	Data Matrix, GS1 Data Matrix
E	UPC/EAN, Coupon (UPC portion)
e	GS1 DataBar Family
F	Codabar
G	Code 93
H	Code 11
h	Han Xin
I	Interleaved 2 of 5
L	PDF417, Macro PDF417, Micro PDF417
L2	TLC 39
M	MSI
Q	QR Code, MicroQR, GS1 QR
S	Discrete 2 of 5, IATA 2 of 5
U	Maxicode
z	Aztec, Aztec Rune
X	Bookland EAN, ISSN EAN, Trioptic Code 39, Chinese 2 of 5, Matrix 2 of 5, Korean 3 of 5, US Postnet, US Planet, UK Postal, Japan Postal, Australia Post, Netherlands KIX Code, USPS 4CB/One Code/ Intelligent Mail, UPU FICS Postal, Mailmark, Signature Capture

The modifier character is the sum of the applicable option values based on [Table E-3](#).

**Table E-3 Modifier Characters**

Code Type	Option Value	Option
<b>Code 39</b>	0	No check character or Full ASCII processing.
	1	Reader has checked one check character.
	3	Reader has checked and stripped check character.
	4	Reader has performed Full ASCII character conversion.
	5	Reader has performed Full ASCII character conversion and checked one check character.
	7	Reader has performed Full ASCII character conversion and checked and stripped check character.
	Example: A Full ASCII bar code with check character W, <b>A+I+MI+DW</b> , is transmitted as <b>]A7AIMID</b> where 7 = (3+4).	
<b>Trioptic Code 39</b>	0	No option specified at this time. Always transmit 0.
	Example: A Trioptic bar code 412356 is transmitted as <b>]X0412356</b>	
<b>Code 128</b>	0	Standard data packet, no Function code 1 in first symbol position.
	1	Function code 1 in first symbol character position.
	2	Function code 1 in second symbol character position.
	Example: A Code (EAN) 128 bar code with Function 1 character <b>FNC1</b> in the first position, AIMID is transmitted as <b>]C1AIMID</b>	
<b>I 2 of 5</b>	0	No check digit processing.
	1	Reader has validated check digit.
	3	Reader has validated and stripped check digit.
	Example: An I 2 of 5 bar code without check digit, 4123, is transmitted as <b>]I04123</b>	
<b>Codabar</b>	0	No check digit processing.
	1	Reader has checked check digit.
	3	Reader has stripped check digit before transmission.
	Example: A Codabar bar code without check digit, 4123, is transmitted as <b>]F04123</b>	
<b>Code 93</b>	0	No options specified at this time. Always transmit 0.
	Example: A Code 93 bar code 012345678905 is transmitted as <b>]G0012345678905</b>	
<b>MSI</b>	0	Check digits are sent.
	1	No check digit is sent.
	Example: An MSI bar code 4123, with a single check digit checked, is transmitted as <b>]M14123</b>	

**Table E-3 Modifier Characters (Continued)**

<b>Code Type</b>	<b>Option Value</b>	<b>Option</b>
<b>D 2 of 5</b>	0	No options specified at this time. Always transmit 0.
		Example: A D 2 of 5 bar code 4123, is transmitted as <b>]S04123</b>
<b>UPC/EAN</b>	0	Standard data packet in full EAN format, i.e. 13 digits for UPC-A, UPC-E, and EAN-13 (not including supplemental data).
	1	Two digit supplemental data only.
	2	Five digit supplemental data only.
	3	Combined data packet comprising 13 digits from EAN-13, UPC-A or UPC-E symbol and 2 or 5 digits from supplemental symbol.
	4	EAN-8 data packet.
		Example: A UPC-A bar code 012345678905 is transmitted as <b>]E00012345678905</b>
<b>Bookland EAN</b>	0	No options specified at this time. Always transmit 0.
		Example: A Bookland EAN bar code 123456789X is transmitted as <b>]X0123456789X</b>
<b>ISSN EAN</b>	0	No options specified at this time. Always transmit 0.
		Example: An ISSN EAN bar code 123456789X is transmitted as <b>]X0123456789X</b>
<b>Code 11</b>	0	Single check digit
	1	Two check digits
	3	Check characters validated but not transmitted.
<b>GS1 DataBar Family</b>		No option specified at this time. Always transmit 0. GS1 DataBar Omnidirectional and GS1 DataBar Limited transmit with an Application Identifier "01". Note: In GS1-128 emulation mode, GS1 DataBar is transmitted using Code 128 rules (i.e., ]C1).
		Example: A GS1 DataBar Omnidirectional bar code 0110012345678902 is transmitted as <b>]e00110012345678902</b> .

**Table E-3 Modifier Characters (Continued)**

<b>Code Type</b>	<b>Option Value</b>	<b>Option</b>
<b>EAN.UCC Composites (GS1 DataBar, GS1-128, 2D portion of UPC composite)</b>		Native mode transmission. Note: UPC portion of composite is transmitted using UPC rules.
	0	Standard data packet.
	1	Data packet containing the data following an encoded symbol separator character.
	2	Data packet containing the data following an escape mechanism character. The data packet does not support the ECI protocol.
	3	Data packet containing the data following an escape mechanism character. The data packet supports the ECI protocol.
		GS1-128 emulation Note: UPC portion of composite is transmitted using UPC rules.
	1	Data packet is a GS1-128 symbol (i.e., data is preceded with ]JC1).
<b>PDF417, Micro PDF417</b>	0	Reader set to conform to protocol defined in 1994 PDF417 symbology specifications. <b>Note:</b> When this option is transmitted, the receiver cannot reliably determine whether ECIs have been invoked or whether data byte 92 <sub>DEC</sub> has been doubled in transmission.
	1	Reader set to follow the ECI protocol (Extended Channel Interpretation). All data characters 92 <sub>DEC</sub> are doubled.
	2	Reader set for Basic Channel operation (no escape character transmission protocol). Data characters 92 <sub>DEC</sub> are not doubled. <b>Note:</b> When decoders are set to this mode, unbuffered Macro symbols and symbols requiring the decoder to convey ECI escape sequences cannot be transmitted.
	3	The bar code contains a GS1-128 symbol, and the first codeword is 903-907, 912, 914, 915.
	4	The bar code contains a GS1-128 symbol, and the first codeword is in the range 908-909.
	5	The bar code contains a GS1-128 symbol, and the first codeword is in the range 910-911.
		Example: A PDF417 bar code ABCD, with no transmission protocol enabled, is transmitted as ]L2ABCD.

**Table E-3 Modifier Characters (Continued)**

<b>Code Type</b>	<b>Option Value</b>	<b>Option</b>
<b>Data Matrix</b>	0	ECC 000-140, not supported.
	1	ECC 200.
	2	ECC 200, FNC1 in first or fifth position.
	3	ECC 200, FNC1 in second or sixth position.
	4	ECC 200, ECI protocol implemented.
	5	ECC 200, FNC1 in first or fifth position, ECI protocol implemented.
	6	ECC 200, FNC1 in second or sixth position, ECI protocol implemented.
<b>MaxiCode</b>	0	Symbol in Mode 4 or 5.
	1	Symbol in Mode 2 or 3.
	2	Symbol in Mode 4 or 5, ECI protocol implemented.
	3	Symbol in Mode 2 or 3, ECI protocol implemented in secondary message.
<b>QR Code</b>	0	Model 1 symbol.
	1	Model 2 / MicroQR symbol, ECI protocol not implemented.
	2	Model 2 symbol, ECI protocol implemented.
	3	Model 2 symbol, ECI protocol not implemented, FNC1 implied in first position.
	4	Model 2 symbol, ECI protocol implemented, FNC1 implied in first position.
	5	Model 2 symbol, ECI protocol not implemented, FNC1 implied in second position.
	6	Model 2 symbol, ECI protocol implemented, FNC1 implied in second position.
<b>Aztec</b>	0	Aztec symbol.
	C	Aztec Rune symbol.
<b>Han Xin</b>	0	Generic data, no special features are set. The transmitted data does not follow the AIM ECI protocol.
	1	ECI protocol enabled. There is at least one ECI mode encoded. Transmitted data must follow the AIM ECI protocol.

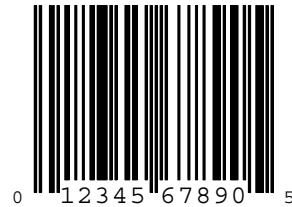


# **APPENDIX F SAMPLE BAR CODES**

---

## **UPC/EAN**

**UPC-A, 100%**



**UPC-A with 2-digit Add-on**



### **UPC-A with 5-digit Add-on**



### **UPC-E**



### **UPC-E with 2-digit Add-on**



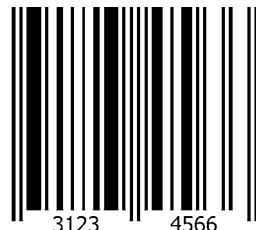
---

## UPC/EAN (continued)

### UPC-E with 5-digit Add-on



### EAN-8



### EAN-13, 100%



### EAN-13 with 2-digit Add-on



### EAN-13 with 5-digit Add-on



---

### Code 128



**GS1-128**



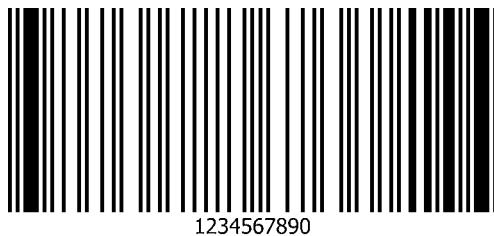
---

**Code 39**



---

**Code 93**



---

## Code 11 with 2 Check Digits



**NOTE** Code 11 must be enabled to read the following bar code (see [Code 11 on page 12-43](#)).



---

## Interleaved 2 of 5



---

## MSI with 2 Check Digits



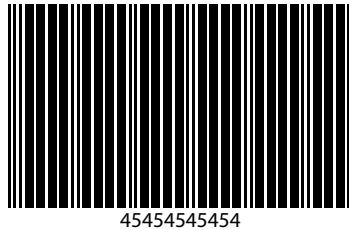
**NOTE** MSI must be enabled to read the following bar code (see [MSI on page 12-59](#)).



---

## Chinese 2 of 5

✓ **NOTE** Chinese 2 of 5 must be enabled to read the following bar code (see [Chinese 2 of 5 on page 12-64](#)).



---

## Matrix 2 of 5

✓ **NOTE** Matrix 2 of 5 must be enabled to read the following bar code (see [Matrix 2 of 5 on page 12-64](#)).



---

## Korean 3 of 5

✓ **NOTE** Korean 3 of 5 must be enabled to read the following bar code (see [Korean 3 of 5 on page 12-68](#)).



---

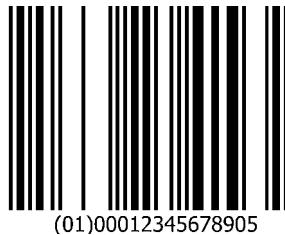
## GS1 DataBar

### GS1 DataBar Omnidirectional (formerly GS1 DataBar-14)



7612341562341

### GS1 DataBar Limited



### GS1 DataBar Expanded



---

## 2D Symbologies

### PDF417



### Data Matrix



---

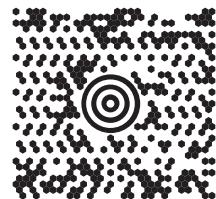
## 2D Symbologies (continued)

### GS1 Data Matrix



### Maxicode

✓ **NOTE** Maxicode must be enabled to read the following bar code (see [Maxicode on page 12-88](#)).



### QR Code



---

## 2D Symbolologies (continued)

### GS1 QR



### MicroQR



### Aztec

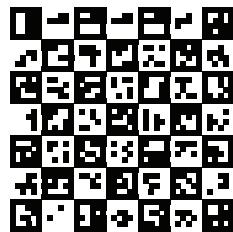


0123456789ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ0123456789ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ01234567890123456789ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ0123456789ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ0123456789

## 2D Symbologies (continued)

### Grid Matrix

✓ **NOTE** Grid Matrix must be enabled to read the following bar code (see [Grid Matrix on page 12-93](#)).



### Han Xin

✓ **NOTE** Han Xin must be enabled to read the following bar code (see [Han Xin on page 12-92](#)).



## Postal Codes

### US Postnet

✓ **NOTE** US Postnet must be enabled to read the following bar code (see [US Postnet on page 12-96](#)).



### UK Postal

✓ **NOTE** UK Postal must be enabled to read the following bar code (see [UK Postal on page 12-97](#)).



### Japan Postal

✓ **NOTE** Japan Postal must be enabled to read the following bar code (see [Japan Postal on page 12-98](#)).



## Australian Post



**NOTE** Australian Post must be enabled to read the following bar code (see *Australia Post on page 12-99*).



# APPENDIX G NUMERIC BAR CODES

---

## Numeric Bar Codes

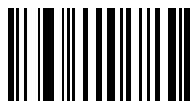
For parameters requiring specific numeric values, scan the appropriately numbered bar code(s).



0



1



2



3

---

## Numeric Bar Codes (continued)



4



5



6



7



8



9

---

## Cancel

To correct an error or change a selection, scan the bar code below.



**Cancel**



# **APPENDIX H ALPHANUMERIC BAR CODES**

---

## **Cancel**

To correct an error or change a selection, scan the following bar code.



**Cancel**

---

## Alphanumeric Bar Codes



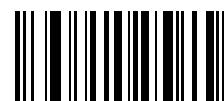
Space



#



\$



%



\*



+

---

## Alphanumeric Bar Codes (continued)



-



.



/



!



"



&

---

## Alphanumeric Bar Codes (continued)



,



(



)



:



;



<

---

## Alphanumeric Bar Codes (continued)



=



>



?



@



[



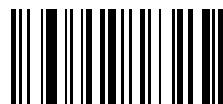
\

---

## Alphanumeric Bar Codes (continued)



1



^



-



## Alphanumeric Bar Codes (continued)



**NOTE** Do not confuse the following bar codes with those on the numeric keypad.



0



1



2



3



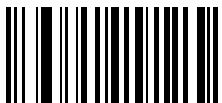
4



5

---

## Alphanumeric Bar Codes (continued)



6



7



8



9



End of Message



Cancel

---

## Alphanumeric Bar Codes (continued)



A



B



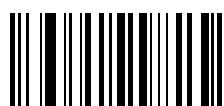
C



D



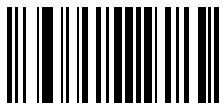
E



F

---

## Alphanumeric Bar Codes (continued)



G



H



I



J



K



L

---

## Alphanumeric Bar Codes (continued)



M



N



O



P



Q



R

---

## Alphanumeric Bar Codes (continued)



**S**



**T**



**U**



**V**



**W**



**X**

---

## Alphanumeric Bar Codes (continued)



Y



Z



a



b



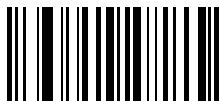
c



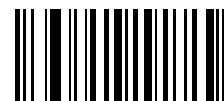
d

---

## Alphanumeric Bar Codes (continued)



e



f



g



h



i



j

---

## Alphanumeric Bar Codes (continued)



k



l



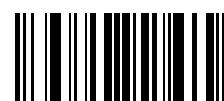
m



n



o



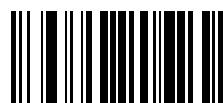
p

---

## Alphanumeric Bar Codes (continued)



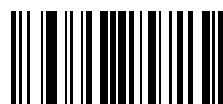
**q**



**r**



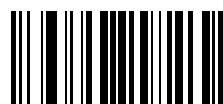
**s**



**t**



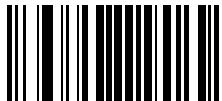
**u**



**v**

---

## Alphanumeric Bar Codes (continued)



w



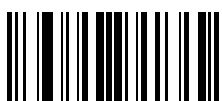
x



y



z



{



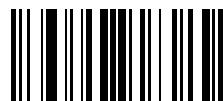
|

---

## Alphanumeric Bar Codes (continued)



}



~

# APPENDIX I ASCII CHARACTER SETS

✓ **NOTE** For the Keyboard Wedge Interface, Code 39 Full ASCII interprets the bar code special character (\$ + % /) preceding a Code 39 character and assigns an ASCII character value to the pair. For example, if you enable Code 39 Full ASCII and scan +B, it transmits as b, %J as ?, and %V as @.  
Scanning ABC%I outputs the keystroke equivalent of ABC >.

**Table I-1** ASCII Character Set

ASCII Value (Prefix/Suffix Value for RS-232)	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char	Keystroke	ASCII Character (Applies to RS-232 Only)
1000	%U	CTRL 2	NUL
1001	\$A	CTRL A	SOH
1002	\$B	CTRL B	STX
1003	\$C	CTRL C	ETX
1004	\$D	CTRL D	EOT
1005	\$E	CTRL E	ENQ
1006	\$F	CTRL F	ACK
1007	\$G	CTRL G	BELL
1008	\$H	CTRL H/BACKSPACE <sup>1</sup>	BCKSPC
1009	\$I	CTRL I/HORIZONTAL TAB <sup>1</sup>	HORIZ TAB
1010	\$J	CTRL J	LF/NW LN
1011	\$K	CTRL K	VT
1012	\$L	CTRL L	FF

<sup>1</sup>The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enabled [Function Key Mapping on page 7-14](#) or [page 11-8](#).

Otherwise, the unbold keystroke transmits.

**Table I-1** ASCII Character Set (*Continued*)

ASCII Value (Prefix/Suffix Value for RS-232)	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char	Keystroke	ASCII Character (Applies to RS-232 Only)
1013	\$M	CTRL M/ <b>ENTER</b> <sup>1</sup>	CR/ENTER
1014	\$N	CTRL N	SO
1015	\$O	CTRL O	SI
1016	\$P	CTRL P	DLE
1017	\$Q	CTRL Q	DC1/XON
1018	\$R	CTRL R	DC2
1019	\$S	CTRL S	DC3/XOFF
1020	\$T	CTRL T	DC4
1021	\$U	CTRL U	NAK
1022	\$V	CTRL V	SYN
1023	\$W	CTRL W	ETB
1024	\$X	CTRL X	CAN
1025	\$Y	CTRL Y	EM
1026	\$Z	CTRL Z	SUB
1027	%A	CTRL [	ESC
1028	%B	CTRL \	FS
1029	%C	CTRL ]	GS
1030	%D	CTRL 6	RS
1031	%E	CTRL -	US
1032	Space	Space	Space
1033	/A	!	!
1034	/B	"	"
1035	/C	#	#
1036	/D	\$	\$
1037	/E	%	%
1038	/F	&	&
1039	/G	'	'

<sup>1</sup>The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enabled [Function Key Mapping on page 7-14](#) or [page 11-8](#). Otherwise, the unbold keystroke transmits.

**Table I-1** ASCII Character Set (Continued)

ASCII Value (Prefix/Suffix Value for RS-232)	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char	Keystroke	ASCII Character (Applies to RS-232 Only)
1040	/H	(	(
1041	/I	)	)
1042	/J	*	*
1043	/K	+	+
1044	/L	,	,
1045	-	-	-
1046	.	.	.
1047	/o	/	/
1048	0	0	0
1049	1	1	1
1050	2	2	2
1051	3	3	3
1052	4	4	4
1053	5	5	5
1054	6	6	6
1055	7	7	7
1056	8	8	8
1057	9	9	9
1058	/Z	:	:
1059	%F	;	;
1060	%G	<	<
1061	%H	=	=
1062	%I	>	>
1063	%J	?	?
1064	%V	@	@
1065	A	A	A
1066	B	B	B

<sup>1</sup>The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enabled [Function Key Mapping on page 7-14](#) or [page 11-8](#). Otherwise, the unbold keystroke transmits.

**Table I-1** ASCII Character Set (*Continued*)

ASCII Value (Prefix/Suffix Value for RS-232)	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char	Keystroke	ASCII Character (Applies to RS-232 Only)
1067	C	C	C
1068	D	D	D
1069	E	E	E
1070	F	F	F
1071	G	G	G
1072	H	H	H
1073	I	I	I
1074	J	J	J
1075	K	K	K
1076	L	L	L
1077	M	M	M
1078	N	N	N
1079	O	O	O
1080	P	P	P
1081	Q	Q	Q
1082	R	R	R
1083	S	S	S
1084	T	T	T
1085	U	U	U
1086	V	V	V
1087	W	W	W
1088	X	X	X
1089	Y	Y	Y
1090	Z	Z	Z
1091	%K	[	[
1092	%L	\	\
1093	%M	]	]

<sup>1</sup>The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enabled [Function Key Mapping on page 7-14](#) or [page 11-8](#). Otherwise, the unbold keystroke transmits.

**Table I-1** ASCII Character Set (Continued)

ASCII Value (Prefix/Suffix Value for RS-232)	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char	Keystroke	ASCII Character (Applies to RS-232 Only)
1094	%N	^	^
1095	%O	-	-
1096	%W	'	'
1097	+A	a	a
1098	+B	b	b
1099	+C	c	c
1100	+D	d	d
1101	+E	e	e
1102	+F	f	f
1103	+G	g	g
1104	+H	h	h
1105	+I	i	i
1106	+J	j	j
1107	+K	k	k
1108	+L	l	l
1109	+M	m	m
1110	+N	n	n
1111	+O	o	o
1112	+P	p	p
1113	+Q	q	q
1114	+R	r	r
1115	+S	s	s
1116	+T	t	t
1117	+U	u	u
1118	+V	v	v
1119	+W	w	w
1120	+X	x	x

<sup>1</sup>The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enabled [Function Key Mapping on page 7-14](#) or [page 11-8](#). Otherwise, the unbold keystroke transmits.

**Table I-1** ASCII Character Set (*Continued*)

ASCII Value (Prefix/Suffix Value for RS-232)	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char	Keystroke	ASCII Character (Applies to RS-232 Only)
1121	+Y	y	y
1122	+Z	z	z
1123	%P	{	{
1124	%Q		
1125	%R	}	}
1126	%S	~	~
1127			Undefined
7013			ENTER

<sup>1</sup>The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enabled [Function Key Mapping on page 7-14](#) or [page 11-8](#).  
Otherwise, the unbold keystroke transmits.

**Table I-2** ALT Key Character Set

ALT Keys	Keystroke
2064	ALT 2
2065	ALT A
2066	ALT B
2067	ALT C
2068	ALT D
2069	ALT E
2070	ALT F
2071	ALT G
2072	ALT H
2073	ALT I
2074	ALT J
2075	ALT K
2076	ALT L
2077	ALT M

**Table I-2** ALT Key Character Set (Continued)

ALT Keys	Keystroke
2078	ALT N
2079	ALT O
2080	ALT P
2081	ALT Q
2082	ALT R
2083	ALT S
2084	ALT T
2085	ALT U
2086	ALT V
2087	ALT W
2088	ALT X
2089	ALT Y
2090	ALT Z

**Table I-3** GUI Key Character Set

GUI Key	Keystroke
3000	Right Control Key
3048	GUI 0
3049	GUI 1
3050	GUI 2
3051	GUI 3
3052	GUI 4
3053	GUI 5
3054	GUI 6
3055	GUI 7
3056	GUI 8
3057	GUI 9

**Note:** GUI Shift Keys - The Apple™ iMac keyboard has an apple key on either side of the space bar. Windows-based systems have a GUI key to the left of the left ALT key, and to the right of the right ALT key.

**Table I-3 GUI Key Character Set (Continued)**

GUI Key	Keystroke
3065	GUI A
3066	GUI B
3067	GUI C
3068	GUI D
3069	GUI E
3070	GUI F
3071	GUI G
3072	GUI H
3073	GUI I
3074	GUI J
3075	GUI K
3076	GUI L
3077	GUI M
3078	GUI N
3079	GUI O
3080	GUI P
3081	GUI Q
3082	GUI R
3083	GUI S
3084	GUI T
3085	GUI U
3086	GUI V
3087	GUI W
3088	GUI X
3089	GUI Y
3090	GUI Z

**Note: GUI Shift Keys -** The Apple™ iMac keyboard has an apple key on either side of the space bar. Windows-based systems have a GUI key to the left of the left ALT key, and to the right of the right ALT key.

**Table I-4 PF Key Character Set**

PF Keys	Keystroke
4001	PF 1
4002	PF 2
4003	PF 3
4004	PF 4
4005	PF 5
4006	PF 6
4007	PF 7
4008	PF 8
4009	PF 9
4010	PF 10
4011	PF 11
4012	PF 12
4013	PF 13
4014	PF 14
4015	PF 15
4016	PF 16

**Table I-5** *F key Character Set*

<b>F Keys</b>	<b>Keystroke</b>
5001	F 1
5002	F 2
5003	F 3
5004	F 4
5005	F 5
5006	F 6
5007	F 7
5008	F 8
5009	F 9
5010	F 10
5011	F 11
5012	F 12
5013	F 13
5014	F 14
5015	F 15
5016	F 16
5017	F 17
5018	F 18
5019	F 19
5020	F 20
5021	F 21
5022	F 22
5023	F 23
5024	F 24

**Table I-6** Numeric Key Character Set

Numeric Keypad	Keystroke
6042	*
6043	+
6044	Undefined
6045	-
6046	.
6047	/
6048	0
6049	1
6050	2
6051	3
6052	4
6053	5
6054	6
6055	7
6056	8
6057	9
6058	Enter
6059	Num Lock

**Table I-7** *Extended Key Character Set*

Extended Keypad	Keystroke
7001	Break
7002	Delete
7003	Pg Up
7004	End
7005	Pg Dn
7006	Pause
7007	Scroll Lock
7008	Backspace
7009	Tab
7010	Print Screen
7011	Insert
7012	Home
7013	Enter
7014	Escape
7015	Up Arrow
7016	Dn Arrow
7017	Left Arrow
7018	Right Arrow

# APPENDIX J COMMUNICATION PROTOCOL FUNCTIONALITY

## Functionality Supported via Communication (Cable) Interface

*Table J-1* lists supported scanner functionality by communication protocol.

**Table J-1** *Communication Interface Functionality*

Communication Interfaces	Functionality		
	Data Transmission	Remote Management	Image and Video Transmission
<b>USB</b>			
HID Keyboard Emulation	Supported	Not Available	Not Available
Simple COM Port Emulation	Supported	Not Available	Not Available
SSI over CDC COM Port Emulation	Supported	Supported	Not Available
IBM Table-Top USB	Supported	Supported	Not Available
IBM Hand-Held USB	Supported	Supported	Not Available
USB OPOS Hand-Held	Supported	Supported	Not Available
Symbol Native API (SNAPI) without Imaging Interface	Supported	Supported	Not Available
Symbol Native API (SNAPI) with Imaging Interface	Supported	Supported	Not Available
<b>RS-232</b>			
Standard RS-232	Supported	Not Available	Not Available
ICL RS-232	Supported	Not Available	Not Available
Fujitsu RS-232	Supported	Not Available	Not Available
Wincor-Nixdorf RS-232 Mode A	Supported	Not Available	Not Available
Wincor-Nixdorf RS-232 Mode B	Supported	Not Available	Not Available

**Table J-1 Communication Interface Functionality (Continued)**

Communication Interfaces	Functionality		
	Data Transmission	Remote Management	Image and Video Transmission
Olivetti ORS4500	Supported	Not Available	Not Available
Omron	Supported	Not Available	Not Available
CUTE	Supported	Not Available	Not Available
OPOS/JPOS	Supported	Not Available	Not Available
SSI	Supported	Supported	Not Available
<b>IBM 4690</b>			
Hand-Held Scanner Emulation (Port 9B)	Supported	Not Available	Not Available
Table-Top Scanner Emulation (Port 17)	Supported	Supported	Not Available
Non-IBM Scanner Emulation (Port 5B)	Supported	Supported	Not Available
<b>Keyboard Wedge</b>			
IBM PC/AT & IBM PC Compatibles	Supported	Not Available	Not Available
IBM AT Notebook	Supported	Not Available	Not Available

# APPENDIX K SIGNATURE CAPTURE CODE

---

## Introduction

CapCode, a signature capture code, is a special pattern that encloses a signature area on a document and allows a scanner to capture a signature.

There are several accepted patterns that allow automatic identification of different signatures on the same form. For example, on the federal tax return 1040 form there are three signature areas, one each for two joint filers, and one for a professional preparer. By using different patterns, a program can correctly identify all three, so they can be captured in any sequence and still be identified correctly.

- ✓ **NOTE** Although the DS2208 digital scanner supports signature capture, the quality of the image is not guaranteed. If the image does not meet your needs it is recommended that you upgrade to a DS4308 or DS8108 scanner.

---

## Code Structure

### Signature Capture Area

A CapCode is printed as two identical patterns on either side of a signature capture box, as shown in [Figure K-1](#). Each pattern extends the full height of the signature capture box.

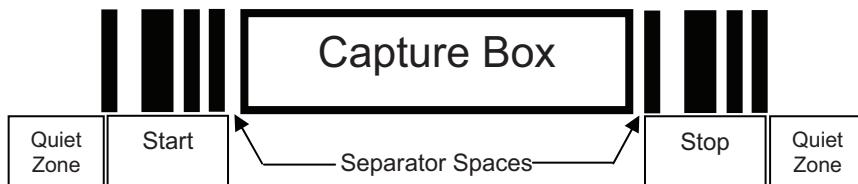
The box is optional, so you can omit it, replace it with a single baseline, or print a baseline with an "X" on top of it towards the left, as is customarily done in the US to indicate a request for signature. However, if an "X" or other markings are added in the signature box area, these are captured with the signature.



**Figure K-1** CapCode

## CapCode Pattern Structure

A CapCode pattern structure consists of a start pattern followed by a separator space, a signature capture box, a second separator space, and then a stop pattern. Assuming that X is the dimension of the thinnest element, the start and stop patterns each contains 9X total width in 4 bars and 3 spaces. A 7X quiet zone is required to the left and to the right of the CapCode pattern.



**Figure K-2** CapCode Structure

The separator spaces on either side of the signature capture box can be between 1X and 3X wide.

## Start / Stop Patterns

*Table K-1* lists the accepted start / stop patterns. The bar and space widths are expressed as multiples of X. You must use the same pattern on either side of a signature capture box. The type value is reported with the captured signature to indicate the purpose of the signature captured.

**Table K-1** Start / Stop Pattern Definitions

Bar/Space Patterns							Type
B	S	B	S	B	S	B	
1	1	2	2	1	1	1	2
1	2	2	1	1	1	1	5
2	1	1	2	1	1	1	7
2	2	1	1	1	1	1	8
3	1	1	1	1	1	1	9

*Table K-2* lists selectable parameters used to generate the image of the captured signature.

**Table K-2 User Defined CapCode Parameters**

Parameter	Defined
Width	Number of pixels
Height	Number of pixels
Format	JPEG, BMP, TIFF
JPEG quality	1 (most compression) to 100 (best quality)
Bits Per Pixel (not applicable to JPEG format)	1 (2 levels)
	4 (16 levels)
	8 (256 levels)

BMP format does not use compression, JPEG and TIFF formats do.

## Dimensions

The size of the signature capture box is determined by the height and separation of the start and stop patterns. The line width of the signature capture box is insignificant.

The thinnest element width, referred to here as X, is nominally 10 mils (1 mil = 0.0254 mm). Select this as an exact multiple of the pixel pitch of the printer used. For example, when using a 203 DPI (dots-per-inch) printer and printing 2 dots per module, the resulting X dimension is 9.85 mils.

## Data Format

The decoder output is formatted according to *Table K-3*. Zebra decoders allow different user options to output or inhibit bar code type. Selecting "Symbol ID" as the bar code type for output identifies the CapCode with letter "i".

**Table K-3 Data Format**

File Format (1 byte)	Type (1 byte)	Image Size (4 bytes, BIG Endian)	Image Data
JPEG - 1	See <i>Table K-1</i> , last column		(Same bytes as in a data file)
BMP - 3			
TIFF - 4			

## Additional Capabilities

Regardless of how the signature is captured, the output signature image is de-skewed and right-side up.

A scanner that captures signatures automatically determines whether it is scanning a signature or a bar code. You can disable the signature capturing capability in a decoder.

## Signature Boxes

*Figure K-3* illustrates the five acceptable signature boxes:

Type 2:



Type 5:



Type 7:



Type 8:



Type 9:



**Figure K-3** *Acceptable Signature Boxes*

# APPENDIX L NON-PARAMETER ATTRIBUTES

---

## Introduction

This appendix defines non-parameter attributes.

---

## Attributes

### Model Number

#### Attribute #533

Model number of the scanner. This electronic output matches the printout on the physical device label, for example **DS2208-SR00007ZZWW**.

Type	S
Size (Bytes)	18
User Mode Access	R
Values	Variable

### Serial Number

#### Attribute #534

Unique serial number assigned in the manufacturing facility. This electronic output matches the printout on the physical device label, for example **M1J26F45V**.

Type	S
Size (Bytes)	16
User Mode Access	R
Values	Variable

## Date of Manufacture

### Attribute #535

Date of device manufacture assigned in the manufacturing facility. This electronic output matches the printout on the physical device label, for example **30DEC16** (which reads the 30th of April 2014).

Type	S
Size (Bytes)	7
User Mode Access	R
Values	Variable

## Date of First Programming

### Attribute #614

Date of first electronic programming represents the first time settings where electronically loaded to the scanner either by 123Scan or via SMS, for example **30DEC16** (which reads the 30th of December 2016).

Type	S
Size (Bytes)	7
User Mode Access	R
Values	Variable

## Configuration Filename

### Attribute #616

The name assigned to the configuration settings loaded electronically to the device either by 123Scan or via SMS.



**NOTE** Scanning the **Set Defaults** bar code automatically changes the configuration filename to *factory defaults*.

To indicate the configuration settings loaded to the device were changed, the configuration filename changes to *Modified* upon scanning any parameter bar code.

Type	S
Size (Bytes)	17
User Mode Access	RW
Values	Variable

## Beeper/LED

### Attribute #6000

Activates the beeper and/or LED.

**Type** X

**Size (Bytes)** N/A

**User Mode Access** W

#### Values:

Beep / LED Action	Value
1 high short beep	0
2 high short beeps	1
3 high short beeps	2
4 high short beeps	3
5 high short beeps	4
1 low short beep	5
2 low short beeps	6
3 low short beeps	7
4 low short beeps	8
5 low short beeps	9
1 high long beep	10
2 high long beeps	11
3 high long beeps	12
4 high long beeps	13
5 high long beeps	14
1 low long beep	15
2 low long beeps	16
3 low long beeps	17
4 low long beeps	18
5 low long beeps	19
Fast warble beep	20
Slow warble beep	21
High-low beep	22
Low-high beep	23
High-low-high beep	24
Low-high-low beep	25
High-high-low-low beep	26
Green LED off	42
Green LED on	43
Red LED on	47
Red LED off	48

## Parameter Defaults

### Attribute #6001

This attribute restores all parameters to their factory defaults.

Type	X
Size (Bytes)	N/A
User Mode Access	W
Values	0 = Restore Defaults 1 = Restore Factory Defaults 2 = Write Custom Defaults

## Beep on Next Bootup

### Attribute #6003

This attribute configures (enables or disables) beep on next boot up of scanner.

Type	X
Size (Bytes)	N/A
User Mode Access	W
Values	0 = Disable beep on next bootup 1 = Enable beep on next bootup

## Reboot

### Attribute #6004

This attribute initiates a device reboot.

Type	X
Size (Bytes)	N/A
User Mode Access	W
Values	N/A

## Host Trigger Session

### Attribute #6005

This attribute triggers a decode session similar to manually depressing the scanner trigger button.

Type	X
Size (Bytes)	N/A
User Mode Access	W
Values	1 = Start Host Trigger Session 0 = Stop Host Trigger Session

## Firmware Version

### Attribute #20004

The scanner's operating system version. For example, **PAADES00-001-R00D0**.

Type	S
Size (Bytes)	Variable
User Mode Access	R
Values	Variable

## ImageKit Version

### Attribute #20008

Identifies the 1D decode algorithms resident on the device, for example **IMGKIT\_7.03T01**.

Type	S
Size (Bytes)	Variable
User Mode Access	R
Values	Variable



# INDEX

## Numerics

123Scan .....	2-1
2D bar codes	
aztec .....	12-90
aztec inverse .....	12-91
code 128 emulation .....	12-84
data matrix .....	12-85
data matrix inverse .....	12-86
data matrix mirror images .....	12-87
grid matrix .....	12-93
grid matrix inverse .....	12-93
grid matrix mirror .....	12-94
GS1 data matrix .....	12-85
GS1 QR .....	12-89
han xin .....	12-92
han xin inverse .....	12-92
maxicode .....	12-88
microPDF417 .....	12-83
microQR .....	12-89
PDF417 .....	12-83
QR code .....	12-88

## A

accessories .....	1-4
interface cable .....	1-4
power supply .....	1-4
shielded cables .....	1-3, 1-4, 7-2
ADF .....	13-1
invalid rule .....	4-5
transmit error .....	4-5
advanced data formatting .....	4-5, 13-1
aiming	
orientation .....	3-8
aiming options	
hand-held decode aiming pattern .....	5-18
aiming pattern	

enabling .....	5-18
ASCII values	
keyboard wedge .....	11-10
RS-232 .....	9-19
assembling the stand .....	3-5
attributes, non-parameter	
beep on next bootup .....	L-4
configuration filename .....	L-2
date of first programming .....	L-2
date of manufacture .....	L-2
firmware version .....	L-5
host trigger session .....	L-4
imagekit version .....	L-5
model number .....	L-1
parameter defaults .....	L-4
reboot .....	L-4
serial number .....	L-1
aztec bar codes	
sample .....	F-11

## B

bar codes	
Australia post .....	12-99
Australia post format .....	12-100
aztec .....	12-90
aztec inverse .....	12-91
beep after good decode .....	5-6
beeper duration .....	5-9
beeper tone .....	5-8
beeper volume .....	5-7
bookland EAN .....	12-11
bookland ISBN .....	12-12
cancel .....	G-3, H-1
Chinese 2 of 5 .....	12-64
codabar .....	12-56
codabar CLSI editing .....	12-58
codabar lengths .....	12-56, 12-57

- codabar NOTIS editing ..... 12-58  
 codabar start and stop characters ..... 12-59  
 code 11 ..... 12-43  
 code 11 check digit verification ..... 12-45  
 code 11 lengths ..... 12-43  
 code 128 ..... 12-26  
 code 128 emulation ..... 12-84  
 code 128 fnc4 ..... 12-31  
 code 128 lengths ..... 12-26  
 code 128 reduced quiet zone ..... 12-32  
 code 128 security level ..... 12-31, 12-32  
 code 32 prefix ..... 12-34  
 code 39 ..... 12-33  
 code 39 check digit verification ..... 12-36  
 code 39 full ASCII ..... 12-37  
 code 39 lengths ..... 12-35, 12-36  
 code 39 reduced quiet zone ..... 12-40  
 code 39 security level ..... 12-38, 12-39  
 code 39 transmit check digit ..... 12-37  
 code 93 ..... 12-40  
 code 93 lengths ..... 12-41  
 composite beep mode ..... 12-82  
 composite CC-A/B ..... 12-79  
 composite CC-C ..... 12-78  
 composite inverse ..... 12-80  
 composite TLC-39 ..... 12-79  
 continuous bar code read ..... 5-20  
 convert code 39 to code 32 ..... 12-34  
 convert GS1 databar to UPC/EAN/JAN ..... 12-71  
 convert UPC-E to UPC-A ..... 12-23  
 convert UPC-E1 to UPC-A ..... 12-23  
 country code page defaults ..... C-1  
 country code pages ..... C-5  
 country codes ..... B-2  
 data matrix ..... 12-85  
 data matrix inverse ..... 12-86  
 data matrix mirror images ..... 12-87  
 decode mirror images ..... 5-23  
 decode session timeout ..... 5-21  
 direct decode indicator ..... 5-11  
 disable all code types ..... 12-8  
 discrete 2 of 5 ..... 12-53  
 discrete 2 of 5 lengths ..... 12-54, 12-55  
 EAN/JAN zero extend ..... 12-24  
 EAN-13/JAN-13 ..... 12-10  
 EAN-8/JAN-8 ..... 12-10  
 eclevel ..... 5-28  
 enable all code types ..... 12-8  
 enter ..... 5-29  
 escape characters ..... 12-94  
 event reporting  
     boot up event ..... 8-23  
     decode event ..... 8-22  
     parameter event ..... 8-23  
 febraban ..... 12-51  
 flush macro buffer/abort macro PDF entry ..... 12-95  
 FN1 substitution values ..... 5-34  
 grid matrix ..... 12-93  
 grid matrix inverse ..... 12-93  
 grid matrix mirror ..... 12-94  
 GS1 data matrix ..... 12-85  
 GS1 databar bar codes ..... 12-70  
 GS1 databar expanded ..... 12-71  
 GS1 databar limited ..... 12-70  
 GS1 databar limited margin check ..... 12-72  
 GS1 databar omnidirectional ..... 12-70  
 GS1 databar security level ..... 12-73  
 GS1 QR ..... 12-89  
 GS1-128 ..... 12-27  
 GS1-128 emulation mode ..... 12-82  
 han xin ..... 12-92  
 han xin inverse ..... 12-92  
 hand-held decode aiming pattern ..... 5-17, 5-18  
 hands-free mode ..... 5-16  
 I 2 of 5 check digit verification ..... 12-49  
 I 2 of 5 convert to EAN-13 ..... 12-50  
 I 2 of 5 reduced quiet zone ..... 12-53  
 I 2 of 5 security level ..... 12-52  
 I 2 of 5 transmit check digit ..... 12-50  
 IBM  
     bar code configuration directive ..... 10-6  
     beep directive ..... 10-5  
     convert unknown to code 39 ..... 10-5  
     default table ..... 10-3  
     IBM specification version ..... 10-6  
     port address ..... 10-4  
 illumination ..... 5-25  
 illumination brightness ..... 5-25  
 intercharacter gap size ..... 12-78  
 interleaved 2 of 5 ..... 12-46  
     convert to EAN-13 ..... 12-50, 12-51, 12-52  
 interleaved 2 of 5 lengths ..... 12-47, 12-48  
 inverse 1D ..... 12-69  
 ISBT 128 ..... 12-28  
 ISBT concatenation ..... 12-29, 12-30  
 ISBT concatenation redundancy ..... 12-30  
 ISSN EAN ..... 12-12  
 Japan postal ..... 12-98  
 keyboard wedge  
     alternate numeric keypad emulation ..... 11-6  
     caps lock override ..... 11-7  
     convert case ..... 11-8  
     default table ..... 11-3  
     host types ..... 11-4  
     intra-keystroke delay ..... 11-5  
     keystroke delay ..... 11-5  
     quick keypad emulation ..... 11-6  
     simulated caps lock ..... 11-7

unknown characters .....	11-4
Korean 3 of 5 .....	12-68
LED on good decode .....	5-10
low light enhancement .....	5-27
low light scene detection .....	5-26
low power mode .....	5-12
mailmark .....	12-102
manufacturing information .....	5-37
matrix 2 of 5 .....	12-64
matrix 2 of 5 check digit .....	12-67
matrix 2 of 5 lengths .....	12-65, 12-66
maxicode .....	12-88
microPDF417 .....	12-83
microQR .....	12-89
mobile phone/display mode .....	5-23
motion tolerance .....	5-27
MSI .....	12-59
MSI check digit algorithm .....	12-63
MSI check digits .....	12-62
MSI lengths .....	12-60
MSI reduced quiet zone .....	12-63
MSI transmit check digit .....	12-62
Netherlands KIX code .....	12-101
numeric bar codes .....	G-3, H-1
parameter scanning .....	5-6
PDF prioritization .....	5-24
PDF prioritization timeout .....	5-24
PDF417 .....	12-83
picklist mode .....	5-19
pid type .....	5-27
pid value .....	5-28
postal .....	12-96
prefix/suffix values .....	5-31
QR code .....	12-88
quiet zone level .....	12-77
redundancy level .....	12-74
RS-232	
baud rate .....	9-8
beep on bel .....	9-16
check receive errors .....	9-10
data bits .....	9-10
default table .....	9-3
hardware handshaking .....	9-11, 9-12
host serial response time-out .....	9-15
host types .....	9-6
intercharacter delay .....	9-17
nixdorf beep LED options .....	9-18
parity .....	9-9
RTS line state .....	9-16
software handshaking .....	9-13, 9-14
stop bits .....	9-9
unknown characters .....	9-18
samples .....	F-1
scan data options .....	5-32
security level .....	12-76
send versions .....	5-37
serial number .....	5-37
set defaults .....	5-5
signature capture .....	6-3
default table .....	6-2
signature capture bits per pixel .....	6-5
signature capture file format .....	6-4
signature capture height .....	6-6
signature capture JPEG quality .....	6-6
signature capture width .....	6-6
software version .....	5-37
SSI	
baud rate .....	8-12
check parity .....	8-15
data packet format .....	8-17
host character timeout .....	8-19
host RTS line state .....	8-17
host serial response time-out .....	8-18
interpacket delay .....	8-21
multipacket option .....	8-20
parity .....	8-14
selecting .....	8-12
software handshaking .....	8-16
stop bit select .....	8-15
suppress power up beeps .....	5-9
symbologies	
default table .....	12-2
tab key .....	5-29
time delay to low power mode .....	5-13
timeout between decodes, different symbols .....	5-22
timeout between decodes, same symbol .....	5-22
transmit code 11 check digits .....	12-46
transmit code ID character .....	5-30
transmit matrix 2 of 5 check digit .....	12-67
transmit no read message .....	5-35
transmit UK postal check digit .....	12-98
transmit US postal check digit .....	12-97
trigger mode .....	5-15
trioptic code 39 .....	12-33
UCC coupon extended code .....	12-24
UK postal .....	12-97
unicode output control .....	D-2
unique bar code reporting .....	5-20
unsolicited heartbeat interval .....	5-36
UPC composite mode .....	12-81
UPC reduced quiet zone .....	12-25
UPC/EAN/JAN supplemental AIM ID format .....	12-17
UPC/EAN/JAN supplemental redundancy .....	12-16
UPC/EAN/JAN supplementals .....	12-13
UPC-A .....	12-8
UPC-A check digit .....	12-18
UPC-A preamble .....	12-20
UPC-E .....	12-9

UPC-E check digit .....	12-18
UPC-E preamble .....	12-21
UPC-E1 .....	12-9
UPC-E1 check digit .....	12-19
UPC-E1 preamble .....	12-22
UPU FICS postal .....	12-102
US planet .....	12-96
US postnet .....	12-96
USB	
bar code configuration directive .....	7-20
beep directive .....	7-19
caps lock override .....	7-8
CDC beep on bel .....	7-16
CDC host variant .....	7-16
convert case .....	7-15
convert unknown to code 39 .....	7-9
country keyboard types (country codes) .....	B-2
default table .....	7-3
device type .....	7-5, 7-6
direct I/O beep .....	7-19
fast HID .....	7-9
function key mapping .....	7-14
IBM specification version .....	7-21
keyboard FN1 substitution .....	7-13
keypad emulation .....	7-12
keypad emulation with leading zero .....	7-13
keystroke delay .....	7-7
polling interval .....	7-10
quick emulation .....	7-12
simulated caps lock .....	7-14
SNAPI handshaking .....	7-7
static CDC .....	7-15
unknown characters .....	7-8
user preferences	
default table .....	5-2
USPS 4CB/One Code/Intelligent Mail .....	12-101
beeper	
definitions .....	3-2
bullets .....	xx
<b>C</b>	
cable configurations .....	xviii
cables .....	xviii
installing .....	1-3
interface .....	1-4
removing .....	1-4
shielded .....	1-3, 1-4, 7-2
signal descriptions .....	4-9
CDC host variant .....	7-16
character sets	
keyboard wedge .....	11-10
RS-232 .....	9-19
Chinese 2 of 5 bar codes .....	12-64
sample .....	F-7
CJK .....	D-1
cleaning the device	
approved for standard devices .....	4-2
cleaning the devices	
how to .....	4-2
known harmful ingredients .....	4-1
codabar bar codes .....	12-56
CLSI editing .....	12-58
lengths .....	12-56, 12-57
NOTIS editing .....	12-58
start and stop characters .....	12-59
code 11 bar codes .....	12-43
check digit verification .....	12-45
lengths .....	12-43
sample .....	F-6
transmit check digit .....	12-46
code 128 bar codes .....	12-26
fnc4 .....	12-31
GS1-128 .....	12-27
ISBT 128 .....	12-28
ISBT concatenation .....	12-29, 12-30
ISBT concatenation redundancy .....	12-30
lengths .....	12-26
reduced quiet zone .....	12-32
sample .....	F-4
security level .....	12-31, 12-32
code 128 emulation bar codes .....	12-84
code 39 bar codes .....	12-33
check digit verification .....	12-36
code 32 prefix .....	12-34
code 39 .....	12-33
code 39 security Level .....	12-38, 12-39
convert code 39 to code 32 .....	12-34
full ASCII .....	12-37
lengths .....	12-35, 12-36
reduced quiet zone .....	12-40
sample .....	F-1, F-5
transmit check digit .....	12-37
trioptic .....	12-33
code 93 bar codes .....	12-40
lengths .....	12-41
sample .....	F-5
code ID character .....	5-30
code identifiers	
AIM code IDs .....	E-3
modifier characters .....	E-4
Symbol .....	E-1
communication protocol	
cable interface .....	J-1
composite bar codes	
beep mode .....	12-82
composite CC-A/B .....	12-79
composite CC-C .....	12-78

composite inverse	12-80
composite TLC-39	12-79
GS1-128 emulation mode	12-82
UPC composite mode	12-81
configurations	xvii
cables	xviii
product line	xviii
connecting	
IBM host	10-2
interface cable	1-3
keyboard wedge interface	11-2
power	1-4
RS-232 interface	9-2
USB interface	7-2
conventions	
notational	xix
country code page defaults	C-1
country code pages	C-5
country codes	B-2

**D**

data matrix bar codes	12-85
sample	F-9, F-12
decode zones	
ranges	3-8
default parameters	5-2
IBM	10-3
keyboard wedge	11-3
RS-232	9-3
setting	5-5
signature capture	6-2
SSI	8-11
symbolologies	12-2
USB	7-3
user preferences	5-2
digital scanner	
parts	3-1
discrete 2 of 5 bar codes	12-53
lengths	12-54, 12-55

**E**

eclevel	5-28
error indications	
ADF	4-5
format	4-5
input	4-4
exposure options	
illumination	5-25
low light enhancement	5-27

**F**

firmware	
----------	--

flash update	5-28
--------------	------

**G**

gooseneck Intellistand	3-5, 3-6
grid matrix bar codes	
sample	F-12
gs1 data matrix bar codes	
sample	F-10
GS1 databar	12-70
GS1 databar bar codes	
convert GS1 databar to UPC/EAN/JAN	12-71
GS1 databar expanded	12-71
GS1 databar limited	12-70
GS1 databar limited margin check	12-72
GS1 databar omnidirectional	12-70
GS1 databar security level	12-73
sample	F-8
GS1 QR bar codes	
sample	F-11

**H**

han xin bar codes	
sample	F-12
host types	
keyboard wedge	11-4
RS-232	9-6

**I**

IBM	
connection	10-2
default parameters	10-3
parameters	10-4
illumination	
brightness	5-25
low light scene detection	5-26
image options	
signature capture	6-3
interleaved 2 of 5 bar codes	12-46
check digit verification	12-49
convert to EAN-13	12-50
febraban	12-51
lengths	12-47, 12-48
reduced quiet zone	12-53
sample	F-6
security level	12-52
transmit check digit	12-50

**K**

keyboard types (country codes)	
Albanian	B-2
Arabic (101)	B-2

Arabic (102) .....	B-3
Arabic (102) Azerty .....	B-3
Azeri (Cyrillic) .....	B-3
Azeri (Latin) .....	B-3
Belarusian .....	B-3
Bosnian (Cyrillic) .....	B-3
Bosnian (Latin) .....	B-3, B-4
Bulgarian (Latin) .....	B-4
Bulgarian Cyrillic (Typewriter) .....	B-4
Canadian French (Legacy) .....	B-4
Canadian French Win7 .....	B-4
Canadian Multilingual Standard .....	B-4
Chinese (ASCII) .....	B-4
Croatian .....	B-5
Czech .....	B-5
Czech (Programmer) .....	B-5
Czech (QWERTY) .....	B-5
Danish .....	B-5
Dutch (Netherlands) .....	B-6
Estonian .....	B-6
Faeroese .....	B-6
Finnish .....	B-6
French (Canada) 2000/XP .....	B-7
French (Canada) 95/98 .....	B-6
French (France) .....	B-6
French International .....	B-6
Galician .....	B-7
German .....	B-7
Greek .....	B-7
Greek (220) Latin .....	B-7
Greek (319) Latin .....	B-7
Greek 220 .....	B-8
Greek 319 .....	B-8
Greek Latin .....	B-7
Greek Polytonic .....	B-8
Hebrew Israel .....	B-8
Hungarian .....	B-8
Hungarian_101KEY .....	B-8
Irish .....	B-9
Islandic .....	B-8
Italian .....	B-9
Italian (142) .....	B-9
Japanese (ASCII) .....	B-9
Kazakh .....	B-9
Korean (ASCII) .....	B-9, B-10
Kyrgyz .....	B-10
Latin American .....	B-10
Latvian .....	B-10
Latvian (QWERTY) .....	B-10
Lithuanian .....	B-10
Lithuanian (IBM) .....	B-10
Macedonian (FYROM) .....	B-11
Maltese_47KEY .....	B-11
Mongolian .....	B-11
Norwegian .....	B-11
Polish (214) .....	B-11
Polish (Programmer) .....	B-11
Portuguese (Brazil) .....	B-11
Portuguese (Brazilian ABNT) .....	B-12
Portuguese (Brazilian ABNT2) .....	B-12
Portuguese (Portugal) .....	B-12
Romanian .....	B-12
Romanian (Legacy) .....	B-12
Romanian (Programmer) .....	B-13
Romanian (Standard) .....	B-12
Russian .....	B-13
Russian (Typewriter) .....	B-13
Serbian (Cyrillic) .....	B-13
Serbian (Latin) .....	B-13
Slovak .....	B-13
Slovak (QWERTY) .....	B-14
Slovenian .....	B-14
Spanish .....	B-14
Spanish (Variation) .....	B-14
Swedish .....	B-14
Swiss French .....	B-14
Swiss German .....	B-14
Tatar .....	B-15
Thai (Kedmanee) .....	B-15
Turkish F .....	B-15
Turkish Q .....	B-15
UK English .....	B-15
Ukrainian .....	B-15
US Dvorak .....	B-15
US Dvorak Left .....	B-16
US Dvorak Right .....	B-16
US English .....	B-2
US International .....	B-16
Uzbek .....	B-16
Vietnamese .....	B-16
keyboard wedge	
connection .....	11-2
default parameters .....	11-3
parameters .....	11-4
Korean 3 of 5 bar codes .....	12-68
sample .....	F-7
<b>L</b>	
LED definitions .....	3-4
low light enhancement .....	5-27
<b>M</b>	
macro PDF	
escape characters .....	12-94
flush buffer/abort PDF entry .....	12-95
maintenance .....	4-1
approved cleaners .....	4-2

how to clean the devices .....	4-2
known harmful ingredients .....	4-1
matrix 2 of 5 bar codes .....	12-64
check digit .....	12-67
lengths .....	12-65, 12-66
sample .....	F-7
transmit check digit .....	12-67
maxicode bar codes .....	12-88
sample .....	F-10, F-12
microPDF417 bar codes .....	12-83
microQR code bar codes	
sample .....	F-11
mounting the stand .....	3-6
MSI bar codes	
check digit algorithm .....	12-63
check digits .....	12-62
enable/disable .....	12-59
lengths .....	12-60
reduced quiet zone .....	12-63
sample .....	F-6
transmit check digit .....	12-62
<b>N</b>	
non-parameter attributes	
beep on next bootup .....	L-4
configuration filename .....	L-2
date of first programming .....	L-2
date of manufacture .....	L-2
firmware version .....	L-5
host trigger session .....	L-4
imagekit version .....	L-5
model number .....	L-1
parameter defaults .....	L-4
reboot .....	L-4
serial number .....	L-1
notational conventions .....	xix
<b>P</b>	
parts .....	3-1
PDF417 bar codes .....	12-83
PDF prioritization .....	5-24
sample .....	F-9
pinouts	
scanner signal descriptions .....	4-9
postal code bar codes	
sample .....	F-13, F-14
postal codes .....	12-96
Australia post .....	12-99
Australia post format .....	12-100
Japan postal .....	12-98
mailmark .....	12-102
Netherlands KIX code .....	12-101
transmit UK postal check digit .....	12-98

transmit US postal check digit .....	12-97
UK postal .....	12-97
UPU FICS postal .....	12-102
US planet .....	12-96
US postnet .....	12-96
USPS 4CB/One Code/Intelligent Mail .....	12-101
power supply .....	1-4
connecting .....	1-4
presentation mode .....	3-5, 3-6
product id (pid) value .....	5-28
product id type .....	5-27
product line configurations .....	xviii

**Q**

QR code bar codes .....	12-88, 12-89
sample .....	F-10, F-12
quick start guide .....	1-4

**R**

RS-232	
connection .....	9-2
default parameters .....	9-3
parameters .....	9-4, 9-6
RSM	
commands and responses over SSI .....	8-8

**S**

sample bar codes	
aztec .....	F-11
Chinese 2 of 5 .....	F-7
code 11 .....	F-6
code 128 .....	F-4
code 39 .....	F-1, F-5
code 93 .....	F-5
data matrix .....	F-9, F-12
grid matrix .....	F-12
gs1 data matrix .....	F-10
GS1 databar .....	F-8
GS1 QR .....	F-11
han xin .....	F-12
interleaved 2 of 5 .....	F-6
Korean 3 of 5 .....	F-7
matrix 2 of 5 .....	F-7
maxicode .....	F-10, F-12
microQR code .....	F-11
MSI .....	F-6
PDF417 .....	F-9
QR code .....	F-10, F-12
UK postal .....	F-13
UPC/EAN .....	F-1
US postnet .....	F-13, F-14
scanning	

aiming .....	3-8
errors .....	5-2, 7-1, 8-10, 9-2, 10-2, 11-1, 12-2
hand-held mode .....	3-5, 3-7
hands-free mode .....	3-5, 3-6
presentation mode .....	3-5
sequence example ..	5-2, 7-1, 8-10, 9-2, 10-1, 11-1, 12-2
setting parameters ..	5-1, 7-1, 8-10, 9-1, 10-1, 11-1, 12-1
security .....	
intercharacter gap size .....	12-78
quiet zone level .....	12-77
redundancy level .....	12-74
security level .....	12-76
service information .....	xx
setting defaults .....	5-5
setup .....	
connecting a USB interface .....	7-2
connecting an IBM most .....	10-2
connecting an RS-232 interface .....	9-2
connecting keyboard wedge interface .....	11-2
connecting power .....	1-4
installing interface cable .....	1-3
unpacking .....	1-2
signal descriptions .....	4-9
signature capture .....	6-3
bits per pixel .....	6-5
default parameters .....	6-2
file format selector .....	6-4
height .....	6-6
JPEG quality .....	6-6
width .....	6-6
signature capture options .....	
signature capture file format .....	6-4
simple serial interface .....	
baud rate .....	8-12
commands .....	8-2
communications .....	8-1, 8-6
default parameters .....	8-11
handshaking .....	8-3, 8-6
RSM commands and responses .....	8-8
RTS CTS .....	8-6
selecting .....	8-12
transactions .....	8-3
specifications .....	4-6
SSI .....	
baud rate .....	8-12
commands .....	8-2
communications .....	8-1, 8-6
default parameters .....	8-11
handshaking .....	8-3, 8-6
RSM commands and responses .....	8-8
RTS CTS .....	8-6
selecting .....	8-12
transactions .....	8-3
stand .....	
assembling .....	3-5
mounting .....	3-6
support .....	xx
symbology default parameters .....	12-2
<b>T</b> .....	
technical specifications .....	4-6
trigger mode .....	5-15
troubleshooting .....	4-3
<b>U</b> .....	
unicode .....	
output control .....	D-2
unpacking .....	1-2
UPC/EAN/JAN bar codes .....	
bookland EAN .....	12-11
bookland ISBN .....	12-12
check digit .....	12-18, 12-19
convert UPC-E to UPC-A .....	12-23
convert UPC-E1 to UPC-A .....	12-23
EAN/JAN zero extend .....	12-24
EAN-13/JAN-13 .....	12-10
EAN-8/JAN-8 .....	12-10
ISSN EAN .....	12-12
reduced quiet zone .....	12-25
samples .....	F-1
supplemental AIM ID format .....	12-17
supplemental redundancy .....	12-16
supplements .....	12-13
UCC coupon extended code .....	12-24
UPC-A .....	12-8
UPC-A preamble .....	12-20
UPC-E .....	12-9
UPC-E preamble .....	12-21
UPC-E1 .....	12-9
UPC-E1 preamble .....	12-22
USB .....	
connection .....	7-2
default parameters .....	7-3
parameters .....	7-5
<b>V</b> .....	
version .....	
bar codes .....	5-37





Zebra Technologies Corporation, Inc.  
3 Overlook Point  
Lincolnshire, IL 60069, U.S.A.  
[www.zebra.com](http://www.zebra.com)

ZEBRA and the stylized Zebra head are trademarks of Zebra Technologies Corporation, registered in many jurisdictions worldwide. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners. ©2020 Zebra Technologies Corporation and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.